Simple Fiqh

Translation of

Al Fiqh-ul Muyassar

Maulana Shafiq-ur-Rahman Nadwi
Simple Fiqh

Al Fiqhul Muyassar

By

Maulänä Shafeequr Rahman An-Nadvi

Translated from Arabic to English
Translation and explanatory footnotes by

Musarhad
## Contents: Brief

### Chapters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS: BRIEF</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FOREWORDS</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PURIFICATION</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALÄH</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNERAL RITES</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FASTING</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZAKÄH</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAJ</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SACRIFICE</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLOSSARY</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS: DETAILED</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Forewords

Al Fiqh-ul Muyassar

(Simplified Fiqh)

Based upon great Imām Abū Hanīfah an Nu'mān’s school

Part I: Worships

Compiler and author
Shafiq-ur Rahmān An Nadwī
Professor at Dārul Ulūm Nadwatul Ulamā, Lucknow

Publisher and Distributor:
Muassasat-us Sihāfati wan Nashr
Post Box: 93, Lucknow, India
In Allah’s Name, the All-Merciful, the Very Compassionate

**Foreword 1**

**BY HAZRAT MAULĀNĀ NI’MATULLĀH SĀHIB A’ZĀMĪ**

**President, Islāmic Fiqh Academy, India; and Senior Professor of Hadīth, Dārul Uloom, Deoband**

Maulānā Shafiqur Rahmān Nadwi’s Al Fiqhul Muyassar is a well-known popular book in Islāmic jurisprudence based on Hanafī school of thought taught in many madrasahs. It takes its simple Arabic style from the acclaimed Fiqh compilation Nūrul Īzāh based on the needs and capabilities of the elementary madrasah students.

I was immensely pleased to know that Maulānā Shamsul Islām Al Qāsimī has rendered it into English to enable English-educated people to benefit from it directly. At present, English is an internationally prevalent language and a large number of Muslims and Neo-Muslims are desirous of learning Islām through it. In several countries all over the world, the work of rendering Islāmic heritage into English is going on at a rapid pace.

I asked Maulānā Muhammadullāh Qāsimī – Head, Internet Department and Online Dārul Iftā, Dārul Uloom, Deoband – to have a look at the book, and he went through several portions of it. The book has used English alternatives along with the Arabic and Islāmic jargons. The language is plain and simple in complete agreement with the original text and the title.

I hope this valuable effort of Maulānā will prove to be a significant addition to the Islāmic repository in English. Allāh willing, this book will be beneficial to students, English-knowing Muslims and in particular, Neo-Muslims.

May Allāh bless and increase the knowledge and good deeds of Maulānā! Āmin!

Allāh’s Peace be upon all

**Ni’matullāh A’zāmī** (May he be forgiven!)

Dārul Uloom, Deoband

29 Shawwāl 1433 AH = 17 Sep 2012
In Allah’s Name, the All-Merciful, the Very Compassionate

**Foreword 2**

To the Original Arabic Book

**By the Highly Revered Maulänä Abul Hasan Ali Al Hasani An Nadwï**

Rector, Nadwatul Ulamä, and

Chancellor, Darul Uloom that runs under its aegis

All praise be to Allah and blessings and peace be upon the chief of prophets and last messenger Muhammad, upon his family-member, all his companions and those who follow him righteously till the Day of Judgment.

The educational system and academic curriculum in different ages and countries are based upon a number of factors. At times, it is experimental, based upon a specific educational ideology and in pursuance of well-defined goals. Sometime, it defers to religious, organizational and financial needs. At others, it is prepared to conform with the age, psychology, intelligence-level and needs of the students. However, the best curriculum and the one most deserving to persist and continue for the longest period is that which includes all the above aspects and pursues all the above goals.

This fact is observable in the old academic curriculum of the Indian sub-continent which has continued to be called the Nizami Curriculum from the second half of the 12th century after the learned Imäm Nizämuddïn bin Qutbuddïn As Sihâliwï Al Luknawï (d. 1161 AH\(^1\)). This current traditional curriculum is the latest stage in the development of the old curriculum which has remained prevalent in the Indian subcontinent since the blessing of Islamic conquest. It has been expanded, reduced, improved and renewed in accordance with the needs of the country, the governments and the society of Islamic India. It has also been influenced by the trends in the neighboring Islamic country, especially Iran which has remained guide and leader for this country, and academic and ideological powerhouse for India, supplying and nourishing it with academic content, written books (especially in the science of wisdom and philosophy) and teachers excelling intelligence and academic research. The Iranians governed India in economic and academic fields and consequently had a huge impact on the academic system as well as on the standards of excellence, wisdom and intellect.

This ongoing high and low, and process of addition and reduction in the curriculum did not stop till the Nizamï Curriculum came into being. And then, it halted at the specific boundary. Sadly, this happened at a time when the curriculum was in far greater need of development and revision than in any other time in the past due to change in the political and legal landscape, change in the governmental language, and conquest of the Western culture and civilization over this country.

This curriculum started with extensive study of Färsï language, literature and poetry that went on for several years. The student in his early teenage would then turn to Arabic grammar and fundamentals

---

\(^1\) d. 1161 AH = 1748 CE (Al A'läm by Khairuddïn Az Zirikli 8/34, 8/267)
i.e., syntax and morphology, rhetoric, and elementary books in logic. The books prescribed for Arabic morphology (Sarf) alone would reach seven and in Arabic syntax (Nahw), there would be five. As for logic, the minimum number of books that a student was supposed to study would be four or five. After completing all of this, he would enter the stage of studying books on Islamic jurisprudence when he would have reached puberty recently or some time back. As for a student who started his study late due to any reason, he would have reached youth by that time. So, the student would not find any difficulty grasping the juristic details, rulings in sophisticated matters, and rare assumptions which the juristic books prescribed in this curriculum were filled with, like Qudüri and Sharh Wiqäyah. He would not be overwhelmed by matters beyond his understanding, nor would his impulses and urges be aroused before time. The teacher, nowadays inhibited by modesty and consideration for the students’ age and intellect-level from explaining and elaborating certain age-inappropriate rulings, would not come across such a difficulty in this curriculum most of the time. Similarly, there would often be no need of a bridge to fill the wide gap between the student’s age and his expected intellectual level, nor would there be a need for deviating from the curriculum. Moreover, the early academic levels would include the study of Fârsî literature, advanced books on morphology and syntax, and sophisticated logic which would collectively tax the minds and develop the intellectual ability to take in, comprehend and grasp these sophisticated juristic rulings.

Then the time came when a considerable portion of the curriculum like the study of Fârsî language and literature, which used to engage a large portion of the student’s formative years and academic sessions, was excluded. The number of books prescribed for Arabic morphology, syntax and logic was cut down. And above all, the goal of freeing up the student’s time and energy so that he got the opportunity to enter the field of professional life earlier became paramount in people’s mind, on account of financial pressures, ever-growing influence of Western educational system, and the goal of life and sphere of competition getting confined to the field of business and job. In this situation, the religious student had no option but to study the books on religion and jurisprudence at an early age, at most in his adolescent years, the most impressionable and complex years of life according to psychology, moral philosophy and medical science. He would be faced with rulings of cases, sub-cases and their derivations from the beginning of the chapter of Purification to the chapter of Marriage which would be hard to grasp. And in case, he was able to understand, it would arouse impulses and urges before the appropriate age, at times leading to psychological and ideological predicament wherein being safe is not commendable and getting into disaster is not ruled out.

When I used to teach children and adolescents at Därul Ulüm Nadwatul Ulamā, this thought would cross my mind time and again. The thought of writing a jurisprudence book appropriate for the age and intellect of students, conforming to the environment in which they live and the age in which they were born, would frequently occur to me. If I could not completely restructure the books, I should at least revise and amend them, I thought. And in spite of my numerous commitments, endless journeys and multifarious responsibilities, I did resolve to do this. I referred the book “Nür-ul İzâh” by the learned scholar Hasan bin ‘Ammār Ash Shurumbulālī Al Hanafī Al Misrī². It is a simple book in Hanafī

² 994-1069 AH = 1585-1659 CE (Al A’lām by Khairuddin Az Zirikli 2/208)
jurisprudence which has gained widespread popularity and currency in recent years in our Islamic seminaries which are called “Arabic madrasahs”. I started my writing work limiting myself and my efforts to the realm of this book. I also took assistance from one of the professors of Dárul Ulüm Nadwatul Ulamā, dear brother Nazrul Hafiz An Nadwi. However, my other writing commitments and journeys obstructed me from completing this work though its need was intense and I realized its importance. Yet, the thought did not part from me at any time. So when it became certain that there was no alternative, I decided to assign this to one of the professors of Nadwah who had been engaged in teaching jurisprudence, was aware of the science of Hadith and was capable of writing for children in plain language and simple style.

My selection fell upon dear brother Ash Shaikh Shafiq-ur Rahmān An Nadwi. Allāh’s guidance was his ally in completing the work in accordance with what I envisaged and what I sketched out for him. He did the work in an excellent manner in a short time and came out with the book which I named “Al Fiqh-ul Muyassar”⁴. His main reference was the book “Nūr-ul İzāh” owing to its several features. He has started every section and major chapter with Qurānic verse and Prophet’s Hadīth so that the student may know the significant position the juristic topic holds in Islamic Shari’ah and the important status it has with Allāh and His Prophet ﷺ. This will inculcate in him the consciousness about faith in Allāh and working for His pleasure. He then took up the definition, literal meaning and juristic description of juristic jargons. He has kept away from mentioning the rulings which are inappropriate for the age and intellect of the students as this was the principal reason for writing of this new book for children. He has also avoided discussing different juristic opinions and has kept himself restricted to the juristic opinion to be followed in practice. He has also avoided things which could create confusion and misunderstanding. So he has mentioned the nouns instead of pronouns and classified the subject-matter in accordance with modern academic works. He has preferred plain and clear language and has added rulings of some issues which are needed in this age but had not occurred in the age of the authors of the past, like Salāh in a train or airplane. He has also provided the modern equivalents for ancient units of weights and measurements like dirham, mithqāl and sā'.

Thus, the book “Al Fiqh-ul Muyassar” which lies in front of the readers comes up as a simple book for the young for learning Islamic jurisprudence and grasping its basics. It fills a void in the religious academic library of the young and fulfills the need of our religious seminaries which was being felt by the people running these seminaries, and those concerned with the education and psychology of the children, and ardent about educating the young students in religion and training them in a manner suitable for their age and intellect, and conforming with the temperament of the modern age and its natural development in the permissible bounds.

Lastly, I thank dear author for his endeavor and present this book deriving authority from my strong bond with Nadwatul 'Ulamā and my general association with religious seminaries as a gift dedicated to the professors engaged in teaching at Dárul 'Ulūm in the faculties of Arabic language, literature, grammar and composition. I hope that the religious seminaries will welcome this book warmly and

---

³ Nadwah = short form for Dárul Ulüm Nadwatul Ulamā.
⁴ The literal meaning is “Simplified Fiqh”.

8 of 177
broaden the field in their academic curriculum so that this book takes its rightful position among the books of jurisprudence and religious education. After all, wisdom is the lost property of a Believer. He is more worthy of it no matter where he finds it.

All praise be to Allâh in the beginning and in the end, and blessings of Allâh and peace be upon His Prophet and chose one.

Abul Hasan Alî Al Hasanî An Nadwî
Rae Barelî
06 Jumädal Ākhirah 1402 AH = Thu, 01 Apr 1982 CE
Preface

To the Original Arabic Book

By Late Maulānā Shafīq-ur Rahmān An Nadvī
Author, Al Fiqhul Muyassar (Arabic Original); and
Erstwhile Professor, Dārul Uloom Nadwatul Ulamā, Lucknow

Praise be to Allāh, the Lord of all worlds, and blessings and peace be upon the chief of all prophets Muhammad, his family-members and all his companions.

This is a brief book of juristic rulings covering the chapters of Purification, Salāh, Fasting, Charity, Haj and Sacrifice in accordance with the school of thought of the great Imām Abū Hanīfah An Nu’mān – May Allāh bestow upon him extensive mercy and envelop him in His pleasure!

My work in this compilation involved bringing together the juristic rulings in a format similar to that of “Nūr-ul Êzāh” by Ash Shaikh Hasan bin ‘Ammār Ash Shurūmbulālī Al Mīṣrī Al Hanāfī. Most of the time, I referred this book for the rulings followed by other books in Hanafi jurisprudence. However, I made the presentation appropriate for the understanding of young students, so I rendered it using simple expressions in an agreeable style so that young students may be able to comprehend and grasp it. At the start of every major topic, I included a Qurānic verse and a Hadīth out of the revered Hadiths of the Prophet, ﷺ as far as I could. The purpose was to draw the attention of the students to the significance and excellence of the topic. I worked hard to keep the book suitable for the level of young students who would be in the first stage of their age and education, so I left out the mention of differing rulings and opinions in various schools of thoughts except in rare cases. This was done so that the mind of the beginner is not confused. Similarly, I avoided the issues which would be difficult for the elementary learner to understand and grasp.

It is not possible for me to avoid expressing my due gratitude to our highly learned teacher and revered educator Abul Hasan Alî Al Hasanî An Nadvī – May Allāh preserve him and benefit Islām and Muslims from him – who blessed me by assigning this monumental task to me, guided me to the right approach, and honored me with the opportunity of presenting this book. If I am successful in this endeavor, then to him goes the credit.

We were like arrows whose hitting the target
Is in fact the successful hit of the archer.

I am also obliged to express thanks to my teachers, colleagues and brotherly students who helped in various stages of the publication of this book. In particular, I feel indebted to my teacher Shaikh Muhammad Zuhūr An Nadvī, the Muftī at Dārul 'Ulûm, my teacher and noted Islāmic author Sa’îd Al A’zamî An Nadvī, Ash Shaikh Burhānuddîn As Sambhālî, Professor Ziyā-ul Hasan An Nadvī, all of whom

5 994-1069 AH = 1585-1659 CE (Al A’lām by Khairuddîn Az Ziriklî 2/208)
kindly consented to revised the work and equipped me with wise suggestions and sound opinions which raised the value of this book.

I express gratitude to All, the Glorious and High and praise Him in the beginning and in the end as all good things are accomplished by His grant and guidance. I request you, noble readers, that if you come across an error or a wrong expression, kindly do let me know so that I may try to correct it in the next edition. I ask Allâh to guide me to the right and to benefit me from it on the Day of Return.

Shafiq-ur Rahmân An Nadwî
Dârul Ulûm Nadwatul Ulamâ, Lucknow, India
12 Jumâdal Āhirah 1402 AH = Wed, 07 Apr 1982 CE
Purification
Allāh said:

إنَّ اللَّهَ يُحَبُّ الْقَوْمَ الْمُمْتَّعِينَ وَيُحَبُّ الْمُتَّوَّابِينَ (الفَرَات٢:٢٢)

Surely Allāh loves those who are most repenting, and loves those who keep themselves pure.

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

الطُّهُورُ شَطْرُ الِْْيمَانِ. (مسلِم ٢٢٢)

Purification is the foundation of worships, so Salāh is invalid without Purification.

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

مِفْتَاحُ الْجَنَّةِ الْصَّلََةُ، وَمِفْتَاحُ الْصَّلََةِ الطُّهُورُ. (أحمد ١٤٦٦٢)

The key to Paradise is Salāh and the key to Salāh is Purification.

The literal meaning of the Arabic word for Purification, Aẗ T̈ahärah, is cleanliness.

In Shari’ah, Aẗ T̈ahärah is ceremonial Purification which is divided into two categories:

1. Purification from de jure Filth: It is called de jure Purification.
2. Purification from de facto or real Filth: It is called de facto Purification.

Purification from de jure Filth is obtained by Ablution, Bath, or Tayammum when using water is unfeasible.

Purification from de facto or real Filth is obtained by getting rid of the de facto Filth by using tangible agents of purification like clean water, pure soil, gravel, or by the process of animal-hide-treatment.
Purifying Water

Kinds of water which cause Purification

Purification is obtained by absolute water. Absolute water is that which exists with its original attributes as no Filth has mixed with it nor has any other thing overwhelmed it.

Absolute water includes:
1. Rain water
2. River water
3. Well water
4. Fountain water
5. Sea water
6. Water from melted snow, hail or ice

Kinds of water and their rulings

Water is classified into five types based on whether purification is obtained from it or not:

1. Pure, purifying, non-Avoidable water
   Absolute water is pure and Purification may be obtained from it.

2. Pure, purifying, Avoidable water
   It is that water which has been licked by cat, hen, carnivorous bird or snake.
   Ablution and Bath are Undesirable with this kind of water if absolute water (of the first type) is present. But if absolute water is not present, then there is no undesirability in its use.

3. Pure, doubtfully purifying water
   It is pure but there is a doubt in its purifying capability. This is the water which has been licked by a donkey or mule. It is undoubtedly pure but there is a doubt whether Ablution (and Bath) with it will be valid or not.
   If no other water is available, then the person should perform Ablution with it and then do Tayammum. He has the option to perform Ablution before Tayammum or Tayammum before Ablution.

4. Pure, non-purifying water
   It is the Used-up water which is pure but not purifying, so Ablution or Bath with it will not be valid.
   Used-up Water: It is the water which has been used in Ablution or Bath for the purpose of getting rid of de jure Filth or for obtaining reward from Allâh, like Ablution with the intention of getting reward by a person whose ablutional purity still exists.

---

6 Pure water is that in which there is no de facto or tangible Filth. Purifying water is one which can be used for Ablution and Bath. All purifying water is pure but not vice versa.
If an ablutionally pure person performs Ablution with water for cooling himself or for demonstrating the method of Ablution to students, the water will not be termed Used-up.

However, if an Ablutionally impure person performs Ablution with water for cooling himself or for demonstrating the method of Ablution, then the water will become Used-up\(^7\) i.e., pure but non-purifying.

Water becomes Used-up when it is applied and then gets separated from the body of Ablution- or Bath-performer.

5. **Filthy water**
   It is the small-quantity, stagnant water in which de facto\(^8\) Filth has got mixed whether the attributes of the Filth is apparent in the water or not.

When the (attributes of) Filth becomes apparent, the water becomes impure whether it is large-quantity or small-quantity and whether it is flowing or stagnant.

If water is in a cistern or pond so big that if water is shaken at one end, the water at the other end is not affected, then it is termed large-quantity water.

How to identify large-quantity water?
Water is considered large-quantity if its cistern or pond is ten by ten in area and it is so deep that if water is taken up with hand, the ground beneath is not laid bare.

Small-quantity water is that whose container is of lesser dimension.

The ruling for Filthy water is that it is impure and no kind of Purification can be obtained with it.

Rather, when it is mixed with something else, that thing also becomes Filthy.

Ablution with water that comes out of a plant or fruit is also not valid whether it comes out by its own without squeezing or it squeezes out due to external pressure.

Similarly, water whose nature\(^9\) has transformed due to cooking, etc. cannot be used for Ablution e.g., soup and beverage.

**Rulings of water in which some pure thing has got mixed**
When a pure thing like soap, flour, saffron gets mixed in water and this extraneous thing does not become the major part of the resulting mixture/solution, then the water-mixture is pure and purifying.

---

\(^7\) Because when an ablutionally impure person performs Ablution, he gets rid of de jure Filth whether he intends to get rid of that or not.

\(^8\) Real or tangible

\(^9\) The nature of water comprises the three essential *properties* of thinness, fluidity and thirst-quenching ability.
But if the extraneous thing forms a major part of or overwhelms the mixture such that it deprives the water of its thinness and fluidity, then the water-mixture is pure but not purifying.

If the color, taste or odor of water changes due to stagnating for a long time, it remains pure and purifying.

If such a thing mixes up with water from which water is not free most of the time and on most of the occasions like alga, fallen tree-leaves and fruits, etc., then the water is pure and purifying.

If a fluid that has two distinguishing attributes\(^\text{10}\) only like milk – which has color and taste but no odor – mixes up with water and one of the attributes of milk becomes perceptible in the water-fluid solution, then it will be ruled that water is overwhelmed and so Ablution with it is not Permissible.

If a fluid having three distinguishing attributes like vinegar mixes with water, then if two of the three attributes of the fluid become perceptible in the water solution, then only it will be ruled that the water has become overwhelmed and so Ablution with it will not be valid.

If a fluid with no distinguishing attribute – like Used-up water\(^\text{11}\) or rose-oil which has lost its odor – mixes up with water, then its overwhelmingness will depend upon its proportion by weight.

So, if two kg of Used-up water mixes with one kg of pure water, Ablution with it will not be valid. But if one kg of Used-up water mixes with two kg of pure water, Ablution with it will be valid.

---

\(^{10}\) Out of a total of three attributes viz., color, taste and odor

\(^{11}\) Use-up water and rose oil are pure, so they can be used to remove perceptible Filth but non-purifying, so de jure Purification cannot be obtained with them.
Rulings of leftover water

Leftover water: It is the water which remains in a vessel after a man or animal has drunk from it.

The rulings for leftover water vary according to the animal that has drunk from the vessel.

1. Pure and purifying leftover water
   The leftover of a man is pure and purifying if there was no sign of Filth in his mouth when he drunk from the vessel. It does not matter whether the person is a Muslim or Disbeliever, or whether he was pure or impure with major de jure Filth\(^{12}\).

   Similarly, leftover of horse is pure and Purification can be obtained with it without any problem.

   The leftover of an animal whose flesh is Permissible to eat is pure and purifying without any detestability; e.g., camel, cow and goat.

2. Pure and avoidably purifying leftover water
   The leftover of a cat with no trace of Filth in its mouth is pure but Ablution with it is Undesirable when Absolute water is present.

   Similarly, leftover of a carnivorous bird like falcon and eagle is pure but performing Ablution with it is Undesirable.

   The same is the ruling for leftovers of animals which live in houses like mice.

3. Pure but doubtfully purifying leftover
   Leftover of donkey and mule is undoubtedly pure but there is a doubt whether Ablution with it will be valid or not. So if no other pure water is present, the person will perform Ablution with it and do Tayammum and then offer Salāh.

4. Filthy leftover
   Leftover of pig is Filthy and Purification cannot be obtained using it.

   Similarly, the leftover of dog is Filthy and purification cannot be obtained from it.

   Leftover of a carnivorous quadruped like lion, leopard and wolf is also Filthy and purification cannot be obtained from it.

   If an animal’s leftover is pure, his sweat is also pure.

   If his leftover is Filthy, his sweat is also Filthy.

---

\(^{12}\) Major de jure Filth is the state when a person requires Bath to become pure like when a man has ejaculated semen or a woman’s menses has ended, etc.
Rulings of well-water

When Filth falls in a well, throwing out all the well-water is Compulsory even if the Filth was in small quantity.

When an inherently Filthy animal i.e., pig falls down in a well, it will be Compulsory to throw out all the water in the well no matter the pig dies in the well or comes out alive and whether his mouth touched the water or not.

If a non-inherently Filthy animal whose leftover water is Filthy falls down into a well, throwing out the entire water of the well is Compulsory.

If a man with no trace of Filth on his body falls down into a well and comes out alive, the water will not become Filthy.

Similarly, if a donkey, mule, falcon or eagle with no trace of Filth on its body falls down into a well and comes out alive, the water will not become Filthy provided that its mouth did not touch the water.

If the saliva of a fallen animal reaches the water, then the water will take have the same ruling as that of the fallen animal’s leftover.

If an animal without flowing blood e.g., bug, housefly, wasp and spider, falls into a well and dies therein, the water will not be Filthy.

Similarly, the death of an animal like fish, frog and crab, which is born in and lives in water does not make the water Filthy.

If a large animal like dog or goat, or a man dies in a well and is pulled out immediately afterwards before it swells up, the well-water will become Filthy and it will be Compulsory to pull out all the water of the well.

In all the cases wherein pulling out the entire water of the well is Compulsory but pulling out the whole is not feasible, it will be sufficient to pull out two hundred average-sized buckets of water.

If an animal like cat or hen\(^\text{13}\) dies in a well, then pulling out forty buckets of well-water is sufficient.

If an animal like sparrow or rat dies in a well, pulling out twenty buckets of water will be enough.

When the Compulsory quantity of water has been pulled out of the well, the well becomes purified as also the rope, bucket and the hands of the person(s) who pulled out the water.

A well does not become Filthy if dung of animals like horse, donkey, camel, goat, deer, cow, etc. falls in a well except when it is in such a high proportion that every bucket pulled out from the well contains a dropping or more. In that case, the well-water becomes Filthy.

\(^{13}\) Or one of its size.
Similarly, well-water does not become Filthy if droppings of pigeon or sparrow fall into it.

If a dead and swollen up animal body is discovered in a well and nobody knows when it fell\textsuperscript{14}, it will be ruled that the well-water has been Filthy for three days and nights. So all Salāhs offered with Ablution from this water will have to be repeated.

If this water has been used in this period in Bathing and cloth-washing, then the persons will take a Bath once again and rewash those clothes with pure water.

If a dead animal is found in a well before it swells up and it is not known when the animal actually fell, then it will be ruled that the well-water has been Filthy for one day and night, so the Salāhs offered in this period will have to be repeated.

\textsuperscript{14} In case, the well is covered and many Muslims have been using it for Ablution, etc. and offering Salāh.
Etiquettes of relieving oneself

Allâh’s Prophet, ﷺ said:

"عن أبي هريرة، قال: قال رسول الله ﷺ صلى الله عليه وسلم: «إِنَّمَا أَنَا لَكُمْ بِمَنْزِلَةِ الْوَالِدِ، أُعَلِّمُكُمْ فِي ذَلِكَ أَنَّكُمْ غَائِطٌ فَلاَ يُسْتَنْتَبِرْهَا وَلاَ يُسْتَدْبِرْهَا وَلَا يُسْتَطِبْ بِيَمِينِهِ، وَكَانَ يَأْمُرُ بِثَلَاثَةِ أَحْجَارٍ، وَيَنْهَى عَنِ الرَّوْثِ وَالرِّمَةِ» (أبو داود ٨)

I am like a father for you, so I teach you that when you go for relieving yourself, you should not face the Holy Ka'bah, nor should you turn your back towards it, nor should you cleanse you Filth with your right hand. Allâh’s Prophet, ﷺ would instruct us to use three gravels and would forbid using dung or bones (for cleansing).

Whoever intends to relieve himself either from urine or excreta should observe the following etiquettes:

1. He should go far away from the eyes of the people till no one is able to view him nor hear the sound of what comes out of his body nor smell the odor.
2. He should select a soft and low ground for easing himself so that urine droplets may not fly back towards him.
3. Before entering washroom he should recite:

أَعُوذُ بِاللِّهِ مِنَ الْخُبْثِ وَالْخَبَائِثِ

I seek refuge in Allâh from evil and the evil-doers (or from impure male jnns and impure female jnns).

(EQ 25706)

A person who intends to relieve himself outside his house in the open should recite this dua when he starts tucking up his garments and before his private parts are revealed.

4. Going to the washroom, he should first enter his left foot and coming out he should first put out his right foot.
5. He should sit putting more weight on his left foot as this posture is more helpful in excretion.
6. He should cover his head at the time of relieving himself and cleansing.
7. He should not urinate in a hole in the ground as it is possible that there might be some reptile in the hole which would hurt him.
8. He should not urinate nor relieve himself on road or in graveyard.
9. He should not urinate or relieve himself in a shadow¹⁶ wherein people usually sit.
10. He should not urinate or relieve himself at a place where people gather for conversation.
11. He should not urinate or relieve himself under a fruit-laden tree.

¹⁵ = Excretion, defecation
¹⁶ Of tree, wall, etc.
12. It is Avoidable for a person engaged in relieving himself to talk without necessity. But if he sees a blind man walking towards a pit and fears that he might fall into the pit, it will be Compulsory for him to speak and guide the blind man.

13. It is Avoidable for him to recite the Quran or a remembrance formula while he is engaged in the act of relieving himself or cleansing his Filth.

14. It is strictly Prohibited to face the Ka’bah or keep his back towards it whether he is inside a washroom or in open space.

15. It is strictly Prohibited that he urinate or relieve himself in small-quantity, stagnant water.

16. Urinating or relieving himself in flowing water or large-quantity, stagnant water is Undesirable.

17. Urinating in bathroom is Avoidable.

18. Urinating or relieving oneself near a well, river or pond is Avoidable.

19. Revealing his private parts for the purpose of relieving himself in a non-hidden place is Avoidable.

20. Cleansing himself with his right hand without any necessity is Avoidable.

21. Urinating in standing posture without necessity is Avoidable as the droplets of his urine might fly back to his body or garments.

22. When he has finished relieving himself, he should step out with his right foot first, then he should recite:

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي أَذْهَبَ عَنِّي الْأَذْنَى وَغَافِئِي.

Praise be to Allâh Who has relieved me of impurity and given me good health. (EQ 30:224)
Rulings of cleansing

Allāh said:

فيه رجال يجتنبون أن يُطَهَّرونْ وَأَلْلٰهُ يُحِبُّ الْمُطَهَّرِينَ (القرآن ۱٠٨:٩)

In it there are people who like to observe purity; and Allāh loves those observing purity.

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

عن أبي هريرة، أن رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم قال: «استنجهوا من البول فإن عامة عذاب القبر منه» (سنن الدار قطني: ۴۶۴)

Keep safe from urine as most of the time, the torment of grave occurs on account of that.

Cleansing is clearing of the external organ for urine or excreta, no matter cleaning takes place with the help of water, gravel or something else.

Istibrā is necessary before Cleansing.

Istibrā is expulsion of whatever is left in the organ of urine or excretion till it appears to him overwhelmingly probable that nothing remains in the organ. If a person has a particular habit in this regard, he should do that like standing, walking, hitting the ground with a foot, clearing throat by hemming, etc.

There is some detail in the rulings for Cleansing:

When Filth oversteps the organ of urine or excretion and gets bigger than a dirham, washing it with water becomes Obligatory and Salāh is not Permissible in its presence.

When Filth oversteps the organ and is equal to a dirham, washing it with water is Compulsory.

When Filth does not overstep the organ, then Cleansing is customary.

In Cleansing, it is Permissible to use water alone.

Similarly, it is Permissible to use only gravel or anything similar to it as long as the overstepped Filth does not get bigger than a dirham.

But washing with water is better.

The most Preferable way is to first mop up with gravel or a similar thing and then wash with water as this would clean more efficiently.

---

17 penis
18 anus
19 In viscous Filth, comparison to dirham will be done by weight and the weight of a dirham is about three gram. In thin fluid Filth, the comparison takes place by area and the area of a dirham is equal to that of the palm’s depression.
20 Obligatory (= Mandatory, Farz): An act whose essentiality is established by an evidence which is beyond doubt. Compulsory (Wājib): An act whose essentiality is established by an evidence in which there is a bit of doubt. For example, the evidence is from a tenable source, or the evidence is from an incontrovertible source like Qurān, Mutawātir Hadīth but its words allow for two or more interpretations. But in practice, there is no difference between Obligatory and Compulsory.
Custom / Customary (Sunnah): An act which is established by Prophet’s practice and statement but the Prophet also missed the act at times.
21 Or oversteps but is smaller than a dirham
It is Desirable to Cleanse using three gravels. Limiting oneself to two gravels or only one gravel is Permissible if that is able to clean the organ. When one has finished mopping up with gravel, he should first wash his hand and then the organ with water. He should thoroughly clean the organ till the odor ends. Upon completing this Cleansing, he should wash his hand and thoroughly rub it till the malodor finishes.
Kinds of Filth and their rulings

Allāh said:

وَثِيَابَكَ فَ صحِّ يِكَّ (٤:٢٤)

Purify your clothes.

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

عَنْ عَبْدِ اللَّهِ بْنِ عُمَرَ، قَالَ: إِنَّمَا كُنْتُ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمُ تَسْمَعُ بِغَيْرِ طَهُورٍ، فَلَمْ يُقُولَ: «لَا تَتَّقِلْ صَلَاتَكَ بِغَيْرِ طَهُورٍ» (مسلم ٤٢٤)

Salāh is not acceptable without Purification.

Filth: It is the state of a human body, garment or place which is disgusting to the Shari'ah and so the Shari'ah commands Purification from that state.

There are two kinds of Filth:

1. De jure Filth
2. De facto Filth

1. De jure Filth
It is the state of a person in which Salāh is invalid. De jure Filth is also called Ḧadath.

There are two kinds of de jure Filth:

- Major de jure Filth: It is the state of a person in which Bath is Compulsory and Salāh offered in this state is invalid. Similarly, recitation of the holy Quran in this state is impermissible.
- Minor de jure Filth: It is the state of a person in which Ablution is Compulsory.

Salāh in this state is not Permissible but oral recitation of the holy Quran is Permissible.

2. De facto Filth
It is the squalor keeping away from which is Compulsory for a Muslim and if some of it sticks to his body, garment etc., then eliminating it is Compulsory.

There are two kinds of De facto Filth too:
(a) Severe Filth  (b) Mild Filth

(a) Severe Filth

Definition: It is the thing whose filthiness has been established by an evidence which is beyond doubt.

Examples of Severe Filth:

1. Spilled-out blood
2. Wine

---

22 A man or woman enters into this state when seminal fluid shoots out of him/her in spurts in a state of sexual stimulation while sleeping or awake. Similarly, if the points of circumcision of the male and female genitals touch each other, both the man and the woman enter into this state.
3. Flesh and skin of a dead animal
4. Urine of a Flesh-inedible animal
5. Excreta of dog
6. Excreta and saliva of a carnivore
7. Dropping of hen and duck
8. Anything whose emission out of the human body leads to invalidation of Ablutionary state.

Rulings of Severe Filth:
Severe Filth is pardonable if it is smaller than or equal to a dirham. If the Severe Filth is larger than a dirham, washing it off with water or some other removing substance is Obligatory. With this quantity on a person’s body, garment or prayer-mat, Salāh is not Permissible.

(b) Mild Filth
Definition: It is a substance whose filthiness is not certain because of the presence of another evidence which indicates its Purity.

Examples of Mild Filth:
1. Horse urine
2. Urine of Flesh-inedible animal like camel, cattle, goat and sheep.
3. Dropping of Flesh-inedible bird

Rulings of Mild Filth:
Mild Filth is excusable as long as it is not large-quantity.

Large-quantity is estimated to be a quarter of body or garment.

Miscellaneous rulings
Droplets of urine like needle-eye in size is excusable.

If a Filthy garment or Filthy bed sheet gets wet by the sweat of a sleeping person or by the wetness of a person’s foot, then if the effect of Filth is apparent on the person’s body or foot respectively, it will be ruled that the body or foot is Filthy.

If the effect of Filth is not apparent on the person’s body or foot, it will not be Filthy.

If a wet garment is spread over a dry, Filthy ground and the ground gets wet due to the garment, then if the effect of Filthy is not visible on the garment, it will not be Filthy.

If a dry, Pure garment is wrapped up in such a wet, Filthy garment from which water does not drop on wringing, then the Pure garment will not become Filthy.

If wind blows over a Filth which as a result reaches a wet garment, the garment will become Filthy if the effect of Filth is apparent on the garment.

23 If the severe Filth on the garment or body of a person is equal to a dirham, Salāh is Permissible but Avoidable. If he has the means, he is supposed to offer Salāh after eliminating it.
If the effect of Filth is not apparent on the garment, it will not become Filthy.
How to remove Filth?

Purity from a visible Filth like blood and excreta is obtained by eradicating the body by washing, no matter the body of Filth gets removed by washing once or more number of times. However, if the trace of Filth in the form of color or odor remains on the garment and removing it is very difficult, then there is no problem.

Purification from non-visible Filth like urine is obtained when the garment is washed thrice and wringed each time in such a way that water stops dropping provided that each time new, Pure water is used.

De facto Filth is removed from body and garment with water or any liquid removing the Filth with which is possible, like vinegar and rose oil.

As for Ablution with vinegar, rose oil and the like, it is not Permissible.

Shoes and thick socks are purified by washing.

Shoes can also be purified by scrubbing over Pure ground when the Filth has a body no matter it is wet or dry.

Sword, knife, mirror and oiled utensils are purified by wiping off.

Ground becomes Pure when it dries up and the effect of Filth dies off. Salāh on such a ground is Permissible but Tayammum with it is not.

When the body of Filth transforms completely like it becomes salt, then it will become Pure.

Filth also becomes Pure on burning in fire.

If the semen of a person attaches to a garment or the person’s body and then dries up, it may be purified by scraping it off.

But if the semen is wet, the garment will be purified only by washing.

Hide of a dead animal is purified by tanning, no matter the tanning was de facto\textsuperscript{24} or de jure\textsuperscript{25}.

In no case will the hide of a swine become Pure. Tanning it or not has no effect.

Skin of a human becomes Pure by tanning, but its use is not permitted. Making use of a human body or any of its organs conflicts with Man’s high status and honor.

Hide of a non-Flesh-edible animal becomes Pure if the animal has been slaughtered in the Shari’ah-prescribed manner.

\textsuperscript{24} De facto tanning: It is the process in which acacia, gall oak, etc. which remove malodor and defect of the animal-hide are used.

\textsuperscript{25} De jure tanning: It is the process in which acacia, gall oak, etc. or other chemicals are not used, instead the hide is dried up in the sun or is smeared thoroughly in soil.
An organ in which blood does not enter does not become Filthy on account of the animal’s death. Example: hair, cut-off feather\(^\text{26}\), horn, hoof and bone.

This is the case when there is no fat in the above things. But if there is fat in them, then they become Filthy upon death of the animal.

Nerve of a dead animal is Filthy.

Musk pouch\(^\text{27}\) is Pure just as the musk is Pure and eating it is permitted.

\(^{26}\) However, if the feather has been plucked out, then it is Filthy as it contains fat.

\(^{27}\) It is the skin-pouch in which musk collects up.
Ablution (Wuzū)

The ruling of Ablution

Alläh, the High, said:

يُّھَا يٰٓاَ حنتُحن اِلَ ذِيْنَ اٰمَنحوْٓا اِذَّ الَحَيْنِ وَا مَرَافِقِ وَامنِسَححونا بِِحءحونسِكُ نالَّلَّ صَلََوةِ ف ۭ عنبَيْنَ كنَال (القرآن٦٢٥)

O you who believe, when you rise for Salah, (prayer) wash your faces and your hands up to the elbows, and make Masūḥ (wiping by hands) of your heads and (wash) your feet up to the ankles. (Qurān 5:6)

Alläh’s Prophet, ﷺ, said:

لا يَقْبَلُ اللَّلَّ صَلََةَ أَحَدِكُمْ إِذَا أَحْدَثَ حَتَّى يَتَوَ ضَّأَ. (البخاري٦٩٥٤)

Alläh does not accept prayer of anyone of you if he does Hadath (passes wind) till he performs the ablution (anew). (EQ 6569)

The literal meaning of the Arabic word Al Wuzū is beauty and cleanliness.

In Shari’ah, Al Wuzū (Ablution) means: ceremonial Purity obtained with water which includes the washing of face, arms and feet, and wiping over the head by hand with fingers.

Salah is not valid without Ablution.

Touching the holy Quran without Ablution is not allowed.

A person who is in a state of Ablution all the time is worthy of reward and elevation of rank in the hereafter.

Essentials of Ablution

There are four pillars of Ablution. They are its Obligatory constituents.

1. Washing the face once
   - The lengthwise limit of the face starts from the upper level of the forehead and continues till the under the chin. Breadthwise it lies between the two earlobes.
2. Washing the two hands along with the elbows once
3. Wiping a quarter of the head with wet hands
4. Washing the two feet along with ankles once.

28 The English word for Pillars is “Arkān”, plural of “Rukn”. It is the act which is an essential part of the main thing and the evidence for its binding nature is beyond doubt, i.e. its source is established incontrovertibly (e.g. Qurān, Mutawātīr Hadīth), and its meaning is also categorical without ambiguity.

29 The English word for Obligatory constituent is “Farāż”, plural of “Farz̄”. A farz̄ is an act, the evidence for binding nature of which is beyond doubt, no matter it is an essential part of the main thing or external to it. So, “Farz̄” (Obligatory act) includes Prerequisites and Pillars.
Prerequisites for validity of Ablution

Ablution is valid only when the following three conditions are satisfied. Similarly, the desired benefit from Ablution can be obtained only when these conditions are fulfilled.

1. Water should reach the entire organ, washing of which is essential in ablution.
2. There should be no material on the skin which prevents from reaching the skin underneath, e.g. wax, flour.
3. Things which invalidate Ablution should not occur.
   • If one of the things which invalidate Ablution takes place during ablution, it will be rendered invalid.

Prerequisites for Ablution to become essential

Ablution is essential only when the following conditions are present:

1. Adulthood\(^{30}\): Ablution is not essential for a child.
2. Sanity: Ablution is not essential for an insane person.
3. Islam: Ablution is not essential for a disbeliever.
4. Having at one’s disposal the amount of water which would be sufficient for all relevant body-organs
   • If he does not have within his power use of the amount of water which would be sufficient for all the organs, then Ablution would not be essential for him.
   • Similarly, if he is able to use water but the water is not enough for all the relevant body-parts, then also Ablution would not be essential for him.
5. Existence of minor de jure Filth
   • So Ablution is not essential for a person already in a state of Ablution.
6. Being free of major de jure Filth
   • Ablution will not be enough for a person on whom Bathing has become essential.
7. Lack of time
   • If there is ample amount of time available (for Salāh, etc.), then Ablution will not be essential for the person immediately. It will be permissible for him to delay the Ablution.

Other rulings related to Ablution

If the beard is dense\(^{31}\), washing the front of the beard will be essential.

---

\(^{30}\) A boy is considered adult when nocturnal ejaculation occurs to him, or he ejaculates at the time of sexual intercourse, or he makes a woman pregnant. If none of these occur to him then he becomes adult on completing 15 years. The minimum age for him to become adult is 12 years. A girl is considered adult when menstruation, nocturnal ejaculation or pregnancy occurs to her. If none of these occur, then she becomes an adult on completing 15 years. The minimum age for her to become an adult is 9 years. (From Al Hidāyah 3/281)

\(^{31}\) A beard is said to be dense when its hairs cover the skin so that an onlooker is unable to view the person’s facial skin.
Washing only the front part of a sparse beard will not be enough. It will be essential to make the water reach the skin beneath the beard.

Washing the beard-hair which flows down from the face is not essential. Wiping it is also not essential.

If an object which prevents water from reaching the skin beneath lies inside nails like wax and flour, then removing it and washing the underlying skin will be essential.

Similarly, if the nail is so long that it envelopes the finger-end, then it will be essential to clip it so that water may reach the underlying skin.

The dirt beneath nails and droppings of fleas do not obstruct water from reaching the underlying skin.

It will be essential to shake a tight-fitting ring if water does not reach the underlying skin without shaking it.

If washing feet-cleaves hurts the person, then it is permitted to let the water pass over the ointment which he has applied over the cleaves. Washing the underlying skin is no more necessary.

If a person wipes with wet hands his head during Ablution, then shaves his head, he does not need to repeat wiping the head.

If a person performs Ablution, then clips his finger-nails or clips his moustache, he does not need to repeat washing.

Traditions of Ablution

The following acts in Ablution are Prophet’s ﷺ Traditions. So, these should also be performed so that the Ablution takes place in a perfect manner. He should:

1. make intention of Ablution before starting.
2. say Bismillâh-ir Rahmân-ir Rahîm32 (بسَمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْْهنِ الرَّحِيِْ).
3. wash the hands up to the wrists.
4. clean his teeth with tooth-stick, if not available then with fingers.
5. rinse out his mouth.33
6. sniff water into his nose34.
7. rinse and sniff thoroughly, if not fasting.
8. wash every body-part thrice.
9. wipe with wet hands the entire head once.
10. wipe with wet hands both the ears – inside and outside.
11. run his fingers through his beard from below.
12. run his fingers through the fingers of the other hand.
13. scrub35 his organs while washing.

32 In the name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.
33 The person should move and rotate water inside his mouth, and then expel it.
34 The person should pull in water into his nose.
14. wash the next organ before the previous one dries up.
15. wash the organs in order. He should first wash the face, then the hands up to the elbows, then wipe his head followed by washing of his feet.
16. wash the right hand before the left and the right foot before the left.
17. start the wiping of his head with wet hands from the front of his head.
18. wipe with wet hands his neck\(^{36}\), but not his throat.
• Wiping with hands the throat is heretical\(^{37}\).

**Etiquettes\(^{38}\) of Ablution**

The following acts are Desirable in Ablution. The person should:

1. sit on a raised place for Ablution so that droplets of Used-up water do not reach him.
2. sit facing the Qiblah\(^{39}\).
3. not seek help from others.
4. speak words of conversation with humans.
5. recite the invocations reported from Alläh’s Prophet\(^{25}\) during Ablution.
6. combine the intention for Ablution in his heart with verbal intention.
7. recite Al Bismilläh ir Rahmän ir Rahim (بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْْهنِ الرَّحِيِْ) while washing every organ.
8. insert his wet little fingers inside his ear-holes while wiping the ears.
9. shake his loose-fitting ring.
• If the ring is tight-fitting, shaking it is essential for the Ablution to be valid.
10. lift up water for rinsing and sniffing in his right hand.
11. Use the left hand for nose-picking\(^{40}\).
12. Perform Ablution before the time for Saläh starts unless he is in the category of the excused person for whom performing Ablution in the period of every Saläh is essential.
13. stand facing the Qiblah upon finishing Ablution and recite the following invocation:
• أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَإِلَهَ إِلَّ اللَُّّ وَحْدَهُ لَ شَرِيكَ لَهُ، وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ، اللَّهُمَّ اجْلَلْنِي مِنَ التَّوَّابِينَ، وَاجْلَلْنِي مِنَ المُتَطَهِّرِينَ (الترمذي٢٦٦) ۔
• There is no God besides Alläh who is the One and Who has no partner, and I bear witness that Muhammad is His slave and Messenger. O Alläh! Cause me to be among those who repent and cause me to be among those who purify themselves. (EQ 25754)

**Avoidable acts of Ablution**

The following acts are to be avoided in Ablution. The person should NOT:

35 Press and rub
36 He should not wipe the front of his neck, only the hind part and the sides.
37 Bidâh
38 The Arabic for Etiquettes is Ädäb. Ädäb, Mustaḧabbät (Desirable acts) and Fażäil (Preferable acts) mean the same thing. However, there is a difference between Etiquette and Tradition. **Tradition or Sunnah** is the act which Alläh’s Prophet\(^{25}\) did regularly missing it only once or twice. A Muslim is rewarded by Alläh upon its performance and is reproached for missing it. Etiquette or Adab is the act performing of which carries reward and missing it carries no censure.
39 The direction of holy Ka’bah in Makkah, Saudi Arabia.
40 Extracting dried nasal mucus prior to sniffing water.
1. squander water during Ablution.
2. be stingy in use of water during Ablution.
3. hit the face with water.
4. speak words of human conversation.
5. take help from others.
   • If he has some excusable difficulty, then there is no problem in taking help from others.
6. wipe with wet hands his head thrice taking fresh water every time.

Kinds of Ablution

There are three kinds of Ablution:

1. Obligatory
2. Compulsory
3. Desirable

When is Ablution Obligatory (Farz)?

Ablution is Obligatory for a person in each of the following four cases:

1. For offering Salāh irrespective of whether it is Obligatory or Desirable.
2. For funeral Salāh.
3. For prostrations of Qurān recitation.
4. For touching the holy Qurān.
   • Ablution is also Obligatory for him when he intends to touch a Qurānic verse inscribed in a wall paper or coin.

When is Ablution Compulsory (Wājib)?

Ablution is Compulsory in only one case, that is for circumambulation of Ka`bah.

When is Ablution Desirable?

Ablution is Desirable in the following cases:

1. Sleeping with ceremonial Purity.
2. On getting up from sleep.
3. To be with ceremonial Purity perpetually.
4. For Ablution over the existing Ablutionary state with the intention of earning reward.
5. After committing an act of backbiting, slander or lying.
   • Ablution is also Desirable after committing any other kind of sin.
6. After reciting a sinful poetic couplet.

---

41 Desirable (Mustaḥáb): An act which the Prophet ﷺ performed once or twice and did not observe regularly.
42 Ablution over existing ablutionary state is Desirable only when the person has performed an act of worship with his previous Ablution. If he has not performed an act of worship with the first Ablution, then the fresh Ablution instead of being Desirable will be reckoned as squandering.
7. After loud laughter outside Salāh.
8. For Bathing a dead body.
9. For carrying a dead body towards grave.
10. At the time of every Salāh.
11. Before Bathing oneself on account of major de jure Filth.
12. Before eating, drinking or sleeping, for a person in a state of major de jure Filth.
13. When angry.
14. For reciting the Holy Qurān verbally.
15. For reading or narrating Ḥadīths.
16. For studying any Islamic science.
17. For major Salāh-call.
18. For minor Salāh-call.
19. For Friday’s Arabic sermon.
20. For visiting Prophet’s grave.
21. For Ārafah stay during Major Pilgrimage.
22. For to and fro running between Šafā and Marwah during Pilgrimage.

Invalidators of Ablution

Ablution is invalidated if one of the following happens:

1. Anything (like urine, excrement or flatus) comes out of either the penis or the anus.
2. Blood or pus comes out of the body and spreads to the skin such that the skin’s purification becomes necessary.
3. Blood comes out with saliva in a quantity greater than or equal to saliva.
4. The person vomits out food, water, blood clot or bile and the quantity is mouthful.
5. The person sleeps and his buttocks do not remain on the ground.
   • Similarly, if his buttock rises from the ground before he awakes.
6. He falls unconscious.
7. He loses sanity.
8. He gets intoxicated.
9. A non-sleeping adult laughs with sound during a Salāh consisting of bowings and prostrations.
   • If a child laughs loudly in a Salāh, his Ablution will not be invalidated.
   • The Ablution of a sleeping person is also not invalidated due to loud laugh.
   • Similarly, if the person laughs loud in Funeral Salāh or Qurān Recitation prostration, his Ablution remains valid.

Things which do not invalidate Ablution

The following things appear similar to Ablution invalidators but they are not Ablution invalidators.

---

43 If the loud laughter occurs inside Salāh, the Ablution stands invalidated.
44 Even though he is already in a state of Ablution.
45 Without touching the holy Book.
46 Flatus: The mixture of gases that are formed as byproducts of digestion process and expelled through the rectum, often accompanied by unpleasant odour and sound.
47 Mouthful: When the vomit is in such large quantity that the mouth gets filled up to the extent that the person is unable to speak except with difficulty, then it is adjudged to be mouthful.
1. Blood appears at a cut but does not flows over its place.
2. A piece of flesh falls down but blood does not flows out as in the disease of Al Īrq-ul Madani⁴⁸ (Nārū in Urdu)
3. A worm comes out of a wound or ear.
4. The person vomits but the vomit is not mouthful.
5. He vomits phlegm. Whether the phlegm is small or large in quantity makes no difference.
6. A Salāh-offerer falls asleep during Salāh – while standing, sitting, bowing or prostrating – provided that he remains in the prescribed Salāh posture.
7. A person in a state of Ablution falls asleep but his bottom⁴⁹ remains fixed on the ground.
8. He touches his penis with his hand.
9. The person touches another person of opposite sex.
10. A sleeping person sways while in a posture that does not invalidate Ablution.

⁴⁹ buttocks
Bathing

Mandatory acts of Bathing

Three acts are mandatory during Bathing:

1. Rinsing out the mouth. (See footnote 33.)
2. Sniffing water into the nose. (See footnote 34.)
3. Making water reach all body parts such that not a single point on the body remains dry.

Traditions of Bathing

The following acts are Prophet’s ﷺ traditions during Bathing, so a Bather should observe them to make his Bathing perfect. The Bather should:

1. say Bismillâh-ir Râhnâ-ir Râhîm⁵⁰ before starting bathing.
2. should form the intention of Bathing to attain Purification.
3. wash his hands up to his wrists in the beginning as he does during Ablution.
4. should wash off Filth, if present on his body or cloth, before Bathing.
5. should perform Ablution before Bathing. However, he should postpone the washing of feet to the end if he is standing in a low level land where water collects up.
6. pour down water over his entire body thrice.
7. pour down water first over his head, then over his right shoulder and finally over his right shoulder.
8. scrub his body.
9. wash his body uninterruptedly so that the next organ is washed before the previous dries up.

- If the person enters flowing water, stays there and scrubs his body, then he has completely performed the Traditions of Bathing.
- If he enters a water-body which has the status of flowing water, e.g. large pond, then also the ruling will be same as above.

Kinds of Bathing

There are three kinds of Bathing:

1. Mandatory
2. Traditional
3. Desirable

When does Bathing become mandatory?

Bathing is Compulsory in the following cases:

1. when the person is in a state of major de jure Filth. (See footnote 22.)
2. when a woman’s menstrual phase ends.

⁵⁰بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْْهنِ الرَّحِيِْ (See footnote 32.)
3. when a woman’s phase of postnatal discharge ends.
4. when a Muslim dies, it is mandatory upon the living Muslims to Bathe him.

When is Bathing a Tradition?
Bathing is a Tradition (Sunnah) on four occasions:

1. for Friday Salāḥ
2. for the Salāḥs of the two Īds.
3. for Ihrām
4. for a Major Pilgrim\(^{51}\) at Ārafah after the sun moves down from the zenith.

When is Bathing Desirable?
Bathing is Desirable on the following occasions:

1. on the night preceding 15\(^{th}\) Sha’bān.
2. on the night of Power\(^{52}\).
3. for the special Salāḥs of solar eclipse and lunar eclipse.
4. for the special supplication for rain.
5. at the time of panic.
6. when the atmosphere darkens suddenly (due to rain, storm, etc.).
7. when strong gale is blowing.
8. before wearing a new garment.
9. when a person repents from a sin.
10. when a person returns from a journey.
11. when a person intends to enter Al Madīnah, the illuminated city.
12. when a person intends to enter Makkah, the elevated city.
13. when staying at Mużdalifah in the morning of 10 Zul Ḥijjah.
14. for the visiting circumambulation\(^{53}\) of the Ka’bah.
15. for a person who bathes a dead body.
16. after cupping.
17. for a person who recovers from insanity, swoon or inebriation.
18. for a person who embraces Islām while in a pure state.

But if he was in a state of major de jure Filth while embracing Islām, then Bathing is mandatory for him.

\(^{51}\) Ĥaj-performer
\(^{52}\) Lailatul Qadr or the night of Power is a blessed night in the month of Ramażān which usually occurs on one of the odd nights of the last ten days of Ramażān.
\(^{53}\) Ĥawāf-uţ Ŭṣiyārah
Tayammum

The command of Tayammum in the Shari'ah

Alläh said in the Holy Quran:

\[ 	ext{إِنَّ اللَّهَ يَعفِفُ عِنْدَهُ وَاللَّهُ غَفِيرٌ رَحِيمٌ } 
\]

If you are sick, or in travel, or if one of you has come after relieving himself, or you have had contact with women, and you find no water, go for some clean dust and wipe your faces and hands (with it). Surely, Alläh is Most-Pardoning, Most-Forgiving.

Alläh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

\[ 	ext{فُضِلْنَا عَلَى النَّاسِ بِثَلَاثٍ: جُلِّثَتْ صُفُوفُنَا كَصُفُوفِ الْمَلََائِكَةِ، وَجُلِّثَ لَنَا} 
\]

We have been made to excel (other) people in three (things): Our rows have been made like the rows of the angels and the whole earth has been made a mosque for us, and its dust has been made a purifier for us in case water is not available. (EQ 8299)

At times a person is unable to use water on account of it being not present at the place, or because of the person suffering from some disease. For that situation, the provision of Tayammum has been made in the Shari'ah. The person should then perform Tayammum in place of Ablution or Bathing so that he is not deprived of the blessing of performing worships which are not valid without them, like Saläh which is the greatest of all worships.

The literal meaning of the Arabic word \textit{At Tayammum} is making an intention. In Shari'ah, \textit{At Tayammum} is the method of obtaining Purification through soil intentionally and it consists of wiping the face and the two arms including elbows with a pure earthy substance.

Prerequisites for validity of Tayammum

Tayammum is valid only when these eight prerequisites are present:

- Intention: Tayammum is invalid without intention. The intention for the Tayammum which makes a Saläh valid should be for one of the following three things:
  - The person should intend to purify himself from de jure Filth. It is not necessary to specify the de jure Filth while making the intention.
  - He should intend to make Saläh permissible for himself.
  - He should intend a worship done on purpose which is not valid without Purification, like Saläh and Prostration for Qurän recitation.

54 Earthy substance is anything that originates from the earth and belongs to the category of earth, like soil, stone, dust.
• If he performs Tayammum with the intention of touching a copy of the holy Qurān, it will not be valid for him to perform Salāh with this Tayammum as touching a copy of the holy Book is not a worship done on purpose. The worship done on purpose is recitation of the holy Qurān.
• Likewise, if he performs Tayammum with the purpose of calling Azān or Iqāmah\(^{55}\), it will not be valid for him to perform Salāh with this Tayammum as Azān and Iqāmah are not in essence worships done on purpose.
• Similarly, if the person performs Tayammum intending to recite the holy Qurān when he is in a state of minor de jure filth, it will not be valid for him to offer Salāh with this Tayammum because though Quran-recitation is a worship done on purpose, it is valid without Ablution.
• He is faced with an excusable difficulty which makes Tayammum permissible.

**Examples of excusable difficulties which make Tayammum permissible:**

- He should be away from water by a mile or more.
- It should be overwhelmingly probable to him or an expert Muslim doctor should have informed him that if he uses water, he will fall sick, his sickness will aggravate or his healing will be delayed.
- It should be overwhelmingly probable to him that the use of cold water would be lethal for him.\(^{56}\)
- Water is in low quantity and it is feared that either he or someone else would suffer from thirst if he uses water for Tayammum.
- No such device is available with which water can be extracted like bucket and rope.
- He fears an enemy lying between him and the water, no matter whether the enemy is a human being or a carnivore.
- It appears overwhelmingly probable to him that if he engages in Ablution, he will miss Îd Salāh or funeral Salāh, as these Salāhs cannot be performed later.
- But, if it appears overwhelmingly probable to him that on engaging in Ablution, the time for Salāh would be over, or he would miss Friday Salāh, then Tayammum would not be permissible for him. He will have to do Ablution and late-perform the obligatory Salāh or perform Zuhr in place of Friday Salāh.
- Tayammum should be done with a Pure earthy substance like clay-lump, stone and thick dust. Tayammum is not permissible with wood, silver or gold.
- He should wipe his entire face and arms including the elbows.
- He should apply his entire hand or major part of his hand for this wiping.
- Thus, if he wipes with two fingers and goes on repeating till he has wiped over the entire face and arms, his Tayammum would be invalid.
- He should wipe by beating the inner palms over the earthy substance twice.
- If he beats his inner palms twice over the same place on the earthy substance, it is permissible.
- Similarly, if soil or dust falls upon his body and he wipes the relevant organs with the intention of Tayammum, it will be valid.
- There should be no substance acting as an obstruction between his wiping palms and the skin of arms and face, like wax or grease. Removing these things is necessary before wiping otherwise Tayammum will be invalid.
- No such thing should occur during Tayammum which invalidates it like menstruation, postnatal discharge or de jure Filth.

\(^{55}\) Azān = Salāh-call, Iqāmah = Salāh-start-call
\(^{56}\) Moreover, he should be unable to obtain warm water.
• If a woman performs Tayammum during the menstrual period or the period of postnatal discharge, it will be invalid.
• Similarly, if a person performs Tayammum in a state of ongoing de jure Filth, the Tayammum will be invalid.

Essentials of Tayammum
There are only two essentials of Tayammum:

• Wiping the entire face
• Wiping both the arms from the finger-tips to the elbows inclusive

Traditions of Tayammum
The following are Traditions in Tayammum:

• Reciting Bismilläh-ir Rahmän-ir Rahîm57 (بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْْهنِ الرَّحِيِْ)
• Following the order: He should first wipe the face, then his right arm followed by his left arm.
• There should be no break between wiping the face and the arms owing to an extraneous act.
• While beating the palms over a clay-lump, he should move the hands forward and then backward.
• Dusting off the palms after raising it from the clay-lump
• He should space his fingers when placing the palms over the clay-lump.

Method of Tayammum
A person who intends to perform Tayammum should roll up his garments from his arms and say Bismilläh-ir Rahmän-ir Rahîm with the intention of making Salâh permissible. He should place the inner part of his palms over a Pure clay-lump keeping his fingers separate. He should move his palms forward and then backward over the clay-lump, then raise them and dust them off. He should now wipe his face with them. Again, he should place the inner parts of his palms over the clay-lump like the first time. He should then wipe his right arm from finger tips to the elbow inclusive with his entire left palm. Similarly, he should wipe his left arm including the elbow with his right palm. He has now completed his Tayammum and can now perform any number of obligatory and non-obligatory Salâhs with this Tayammum.

Invalidators of Tayammum
1. Anything that invalidates Ablution invalidates Tayammum as well.
2. Ability to use water and end of the excusable difficulty that had made Tayammum permissible for him like absence of water, fear of an enemy, fear of a disease, etc.

57 In the name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.
Other rulings related to Tayammum

- If a person performs Tayammum for performing funeral Salāh or Prostration of Qurān recitation, it is valid for him to perform any kind of Salāh with that Tayammum.
- If a person performs Tayammum with the purpose of entering a mosque, it is not permissible for him to perform Salāh with that Tayammum.
- If a person performs Tayammum with the purpose of visiting graves or for burying a dead body, it is not permissible for him to perform Salāh with that Tayammum.
- If a person expects that he will be able to find water before the end of the time of the current Salāh, it is desirable for him to delay Tayammum till he nears the end of time.
- If a person has been promised water by somebody, then it is compulsory for him to delay Tayammum.
- If a person has a little water and he needs to knead flour, he should knead the flour and perform Tayammum for Salāh.
- If a person has a little water and he needs to cook gravy, he should perform ablution with the water instead of cooking the gravy.
- It is compulsory for him to request his companion for water who has some if it is a place where people are not miserly regarding water.
- If it is a place where people are miserly regarding water, it is not compulsory for him to request another person for water.
- It is permissible to perform Tayammum before the time of Salāh begins if he is not in the category of an excusable person.
- If a person’s hands and feet have been cut off and his face is injured, he will perform Salāh without Ablution or Tayammum.
- If half or majority of the organs of Ablution are injured, he will perform Tayammum.
- If majority of his Ablution organs are healthy, he will perform Ablution and wipe the injured organ.
Wiping thick socks

Allāh said:

عِيْشُّنَكَ اللّٰهُ وَلاَ يُبَيِّنَكَ للّٰهَ عِيْشٍ يُحَسُّنُ وَلَلّٰهِ يُحَسُّنُ عِيْشٍ (القرآن ٢٢٦ ٢)

Allāh intends (to provide) ease for you and does not intend (to create) hardship for you.

Allāh’s Prophet’s hadīth:

عَنْ خُزَيْمَةَ بْنِ ثَابِتٍ، عَنِ النَّبِي ِصَلَّى اللَّٰهَ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ، أَنَّهُ سُئِلَ عَنِ المَسْحِ عَلَى الخُفَّيْنِ؟ فَقَالَ: «لِلْمُسَافِرِ ثَلَََثَاءٌ، وَلِلْمُقِيمِ يَوْمٌ» (سنن الترمذي: ٩٥)

Khuzaymah ibn Thabit رضي الله عنه reported that the Prophet ﷺ was asked about wiping over socks. He said, "It is three days for a traveler and one day for a resident." (EQ: 25792)

The Shari’ah has permitted wiping thick socks instead of washing the feet during Ablution as a convenience for the people.

Prerequisites for validity of wiping thick socks

Wiping thick socks is valid when the following prerequisites are met:

1. The person should have worn the thick socks in a state of de jure Purity. If he put on thick socks after washing his feet before completing Ablution, then wiping them later will be permissible only if he completed his Ablution on this occasion before any de jure Filth came up.

2. The thick socks should cover the ankles.

3. Each of the thick socks should be free of hole of the size of three smallest toes or larger.

4. The thick socks should hold on to the legs without a need of tying

5. They should prevent outside water from percolating to the feet.

6. It should be possible to take consecutive steps wearing them.

Mandatory acts and Traditions of wiping

The mandatory amount of wiping is the amount wiped by the three smallest fingers of a hand over the top front part of each foot.

The Tradition in wiping is to wipe with his fingers held apart longitudinally from the tip of toes to the shank.

Period of validity of wiping the socks

Period of resident: Period of permissibility of wiping socks for resident is one day and night.

---

58 Or using rubber bands, as is the case with the thin socks prevalent in our times.
59 They should not fall off while walking.
**Period of traveler**: Period of permissibility of wiping socks for traveler is three days and nights\textsuperscript{61}.

The period of permissibility starts from the time of onset of Filth, not from the time of wearing the thick socks.

If a traveler wipes his thick socks, then starts traveling before completing the period of resident, he will complete the period of traveler.

If a traveler becomes resident after completing the 24-hour period, his period of permissibility ends forthwith.

But if the traveler became resident before completing the 24-hour period, he can complete the remaining part of the 24-hour period.

**Invalidators for wiping thick socks**

1. Anything that invalidates Ablution also invalidates wiping thick socks.
2. The Purity attained by wiping thick socks is invalidated by taking off a sock.
3. If major part of a foot comes out to the shank portion of the thick sock, the wiping is invalidated.
4. Wiping is invalidated at the completion of the period of permissibility.
5. Wiping is invalidated if water reaches major part of either of the two feet inside thick socks.

Wiping turban, cap or veil instead of wiping the head during Ablution is not permissible.

Similarly, wiping the gloves instead of washing the hands during Ablution is not permissible.

\textsuperscript{60} 24 hours.
\textsuperscript{61} 72 hours.
Wiping wound-dressing and splint

Allāh said:

ْمِّن حَرَجٍ ِيْن ِهحوَ اجنتَىكُ (القرآن ٢٢۸٢)

He has chosen you and did not impose any hardship on you in the religion.

If an organ is injured, wound-dressing is applied on it and the person can neither wash nor wipe the organ directly, he will wipe the major part of the dressing from top. He will continue wiping till the wound is healed.

Putting on the dressing in a state of de jure Purity is not a prerequisite.

Similarly, if an organ breaks and a splint or bandage has been placed over it, he will wipe the splint till the wound heals.

Putting on the splint or bandage in a state of de jure Purity is not a prerequisite.

It is permissible to wipe the splint of one of the feet and wash the other.

Wiping the bandage will not be invalidated if the bandage falls off before the wound has healed.

Replacing the bandage is will not necessitate repetition of wiping over it.

However, it is preferable to repeat wiping on the new bandage after replacement.

If a person suffers from sore eyes and an expert Muslim physician forbids him from washing his eyes, it will be permissible for him to wipe them.

Intention is not a prerequisite for wiping thick socks, bandage or head. Intention is a prerequisite only for Tayammum.
Salāḥ

Allāh said:

٤٤٨٢٢٢ (القرآن)

خُفِّفْوا عَلَى الصَّلُوبِ وَالصَّلْوَةِ الْوَسْطَى وَقُمْوا إِلَيْهِ مَيِّتَينَ (القرآن)

Take due care of all the prayers, and the middle prayer, and stand before Allāh in total devotion.

Allāh’s Prophet said:

«أَرَأَيْتُمْ لَوْ أَنَّ نَهْرًا بِبَابِ أحَدِكُمْ يَغْتَسِلُ مِنْهُ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ خَمْسَ مَرَّاتٍ، هَلْ يَبْقَى مِنْ دَرَنِهِ شَيْءٌ؟»

قَالُوا : لَيَبْقَى مِنْ دَرَنِهِ شَيْءٌ، قَالَ «فَذَلِكَ مَثَلُ الصَّلَوَاتِ الْخَمْسِ، يَمْحُو اللُّبِهِنَّ الْخَطَايَا» (مسلم)

Just see, can anything of his filthiness remain (on the body of) any one of you if there were a river at his door in which he washed himself five times daily? The Companions said: Nothing of his filthiness will remain (on his body). He said: That is like the five prayers by which Allāh obliterates sins. (EQ: 8656)

Salāḥ is the greatest type of worship as it connects the servant with his Lord.

Salāḥ is expression of gratitude to Allāh over his innumerable bounties.

The literal meaning of the Arabic word As̈ S̈alāḥ is prayer.

In Shari’ah, As̈ S̈alāḥ is the collection of words and acts which begin with saying of اللُ أكْبَرُ (Allāhu akbar62) and end with أَسْلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَرَحْمَةُ اللِّهِ (As salāmu ālaikum wa raḩmatullāh63) in accordance with the prescribed prerequisites.

Kinds of Salāḥ

There are two kinds of Salāḥ:

1. Salāḥ inclusive of Bowing and Prostration
2. Salāḥ without Bowing and Prostration, i.e. the funeral Salāh.

The Salāḥ inclusive of Bowing and Prostration is further categorized into three:

a. **Obligatory**: This includes the five daily Salāhs.

b. **Compulsory**: This includes the Witr Salāh, the Salāhs of the two Īds, delayed performing of a supererogatory Salāh which was broken after starting it, and the two Salāh-units after circumambulation of the holy Ka’bah.

c. **Supererogatory**: This includes all the Salāhs other then the obligatory and compulsory Salāhs.

Prerequisites for Salāḥ to become obligatory

Salāḥ becomes obligatory upon a person only when these three prerequisites are found in him:

---

62 Allāh is the greatest.

63 Peace and Allāh’s mercy be upon you.
1. Islâm: Salāh is not obligatory for a Disbeliever.
2. Puberty: Salāh is not obligatory for a child.
3. Intellect: Salāh is not obligatory for an insane person.

However, the parents are supposed to order their children to perform Salāh once they are seven and to beat them with hands upon missing a Salāh once they are ten years old so that they become used to performing Salāh on time before it becomes obligatory for them.
Times of Salāhs

Allāh said:

إنّ الصلاة كَانَتْ عَلَى الْمُؤْمِنِينَ كِتَابًا مُّفَقَهًا (الفران 4:103)

Surely, Salah is an obligation on the believers that is tied up with time.

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

"خمس صلاوات أفرضهن اللہ على عباده من أحسن وضوءهن وصلاةهن لوقتهن، فألزم ركوعهن وسجودهن وحضورهن كان لله عند الله عهدًا أن يغفر له، ومن لم يفعل فليس له عند الله عهدًا إن شاء غفر له، وإن شاء عذب له" (أحمد 62711)

Allāh has made five Salāhs obligatory. If a person performs the Ablutions for them nicely, performs the Salāhs on time devoutly, doing the Bowings and Prostrations perfectly, then it is Allāh’s vow that He will forgive him. For a person who does not do these, there is no vow from Allāh: He may forgive him if He likes or He may punish him if He so likes.

Allāh has made five Salāhs obligatory every 24 hours. They are:

1. Fajr Salāh: consists of two Salāh-units. Its time starts when the true dawn appears and remains till just before sunrise.

2. Zuhr Salāh: consists of four Salāh-units. Its time starts immediately after noon, i.e. when the sun has moved down from the center of the sky (zenith), and the time remains till the shadow of every object becomes twice its size in addition to the original shadow-size which is found at exact noon. This end-time is according to Imām Abū Hanifah and this is the view to be followed. The later Hanafīs have been practicing upon this opinion.

However, according to Imāms Abū Yüsuf and Muhammad, the time of Zuhr remains till the shadow of every object becomes equal to its size. Imām Tahāwī has called this opinion preferable.

3. Āṣr Salāh: consists of four Salāh-units. Its time starts after the end of the time of Zuhr64 and remains till sunset.

4. Maghrib Salāh: consists of three Salāh-units. Its time starts from sunset and remains till red twilight disappears. This is the view to be followed regarding the end-time65.

5. Ḥiṣā Salāh: consists of four Salāh-units.

---

64 According to Imām Abū Hanifah, the start-time of Āṣr is when the shadow of every object becomes twice its size in addition to the original shadow-size; and according to Imāms Abū Yüsuf and Muhammad, Āṣr starts when the shadow of every object has become equal to its size.

65 Maghrib time ends with the disappearance of red twilight according to Imāms Abū Yüsuf and Muhammad while according to Imām Abū Hanifah, it continues till the disappearance of white twilight which appears after the red twilight has disappeared.
Its time starts with the disappearance of the twilight and remains till the true dawn appears.

- **Witr Salāḥ:** consists of three Salāḥ-units and it is compulsory. Its start and end time are same as those of Ḩishā, however, it must be offered after Ḩishā Salāḥ.

  So, if a person performs Witr Salāḥ before Ḩish ā Salāḥ, it will be compulsory for him to repeat the Witr Salāḥ after the Ḩish ā.

### Other rulings related to Salāḥ-times

The desirable time for performing Fajr Salāḥ is when light has spread before sunset.

In summer, it is desirable to delay Zuhr Salāḥ.
In winter, it is desirable to perform Zuhr Salāḥ early.
But if the sky is cloudy in winter, it is desirable to delay Zuhr Salāḥ till it becomes certain that the sun has moved down from the zenith.

It is desirable to delay Āsr as long as the sun does not change its color.
On a cloudy day, it is desirable to perform Āsr Salāḥ early.

It is desirable to perform Maghrib Salāḥ early.
On a cloudy evening, delaying Maghrib Salāḥ is desirable.

It is desirable to delay Ḩish ā Salāḥ up to one-third of the night\(^{66}\).
For a person who is confident of getting up at the near-end of the night, it is desirable to delay Witr Salāḥ up to that time.

Performing together two Salāḥs at the time of one of them is not permissible, no matter this happens due to an excusable difficulty or without one.
Only for Haj-performers, it is compulsory to perform together Zuhr and Āsr at Ārafah with the Imām at the time of Zuhr, and to perform together Maghrib and Ḩish ā at Muzdalifah at the time they reach it.

### Times when Salāḥ is not permissible

Salāḥ is not permissible at the following times irrespective of its being obligatory or compulsory.
Late-performing of missed prayers is also not permissible in these times.

1. The time of the rising of the sun till it has risen high in the sky\(^{67}\).
2. The time when the sun is at the zenith till it moves down.
3. The time in the evening when the sun has turned yellow till it sets. The only exception for this time is the Āsr Salāḥ of that day which can be performed even when the sun has turned yellow.

\(^{66}\) In Islamic calculations, “night” starts at sunset and ends at the appearance of the true dawn or the start of the Fajr prayer.

\(^{67}\) Around 20 minutes after sunrise
If a Salāh which became compulsory in one of these times is performed in these periods, the Salāh will be valid but avoidable.

If a funeral comes up in one of these periods, the funeral prayer will be valid but avoidable.

If a person recites a Qur'ānic verse of Prostration in one of these periods, performing the Prostration of recitation at that time will be valid but avoidable.

Supererogatory Salāhs are strictly avoidable in these periods.

**Times when supererogatory Salāhs are avoidable**

Supererogatory Salāhs are avoidable in the following periods of time:

1. Salāh other than the two Traditional Salāh-units of Fajr after the appearance of the true dawn
2. After performing the obligatory Fajr Salāh till the sun rises high in the morning
3. After the obligatory Āsr Salāh till the sun sets
4. When the sermonizer comes out for the Arabic sermon of the Friday Salāh till he completes the obligatory Friday Salāh
5. At the time of Salāh-start-call: The exception is the traditional two Salāh-units of Fajr.
   Performing it in a distant side of the mosque during the Salāh-start-call or after it is permissible and not even avoidable, if he is confident of catching up with the Imām in the second Salāh-unit of the obligatory Fajr Salāh.
6. Before Īd Salāh: A person should neither perform a supererogatory Salāh at his home nor at the Īd-mosque.
7. After Īd Salāh, only in the Īd-mosque.
   If a person performs a supererogatory Salāh at his home after the Īd-Salāh, it is permissible, not even avoidable.
8. If there is little time left for an obligatory Salāh such that if he engages in a supererogatory Salāh, it is feared that he may miss the time of compulsory Salāh
9. When meal is laid before a hungry person and his heart is strongly desirous of taking the meal
10. When he is finding difficulty in obstructing urine, feces or flatus: Salāh whether obligatory or supererogatory is avoidable in such a state.
11. When something appears which engages his heart and interferes with his devoutness in the supererogatory Salāh
12. Between Zuhr and Āsr prayers at Ārafah, only for Haj-performers
13. Between Maghrib and Īshā prayers at Muzdalifah, only for Haj-performers

---

68 Around 20 minutes after sunrise
Salāh-call and Salāh-start-call: Azān and Iqāmah

Salāh-call for obligatory prayers is an emphasized tradition for men.

Salāh-start-call for obligatory prayers too is an emphasized tradition for men no matter whether the man is a resident or a traveler, he performs the Salāh in congregation or alone, and he is performing the Salāh on time or late-performing it.

Salāh-call is saying loud these words:

| Allāhu Akbar, Allāhu Akbar                        | الله أَكْبَرُ الله أَكْبَرُ |
| Allāhu Akbar, Allāhu Akbar                        | الله أَكْبَرُ الله أَكْبَرُ |
| Ashhadu al lā ilāha ill-Allāh                      | أَشْهَدُ أن لَّا إِلَهَ إِلَّا الله |
| Ashhadu al lā ilāha ill-Allāh                      | أَشْهَدُ أن لَّا إِلَهَ إِلَّا الله |
| Ashhadu anna Muhammad-ar rasūlullāh                | أَشْهَدُ أن مُحَمَّدًا رَّسُولُ الله |
| Ashhadu anna Muhammad-ar rasūlullāh                | أَشْهَدُ أن مُحَمَّدًا رَّسُولُ الله |
| Hayya ālaš šālah                                   | حَيْ يَ عَلَى الصَّلََةِ |
| Hayya ālaš šālah                                   | حَيْ يَ عَلَى الصَّلََةِ |
| Ḥayya ālaal falāh                                  | حَيْ يَ عَلَى الفَلََحِ |
| Ḥayya ālaal falāh                                  | حَيْ يَ عَلَى الفَلََحِ |
| Allāhu Akbar, Allāhu Akbar                         | الله أَكْبَرُ الله أَكْبَرُ |
| Lā ilāha ill-Allān69                               | لَ إِلَهَ إِلَّا الله |

In the Fajr Salāh-call, the caller should add the words الصلاة خَبَرَ مَن النَّوْم (Aṣṣalātū khairum minaum70) twice after the second حَيَّ عَلَى الفَلََحِ (Ḥayya ālaal falāh).

Salāh-start-call is similar to Salāh-call except that the caller adds the words Qad qāmat-iṣṣalāh71 twice after the second حَيَّ عَلَى الفَلََحِ (Ḥayya ālaal falāh).

Salāh-call is to be said slowly while Salāh-start-call is to be said at a fast pace.

Salāh-call is valid only in Arabic language.

If a person says the Salāh-call in a language other than Arabic, it will be invalid whether he considers it a valid Salāh-call or not.

---

69 Allāh is the greatest, Allāh is the greatest. Allāh is the greatest, Allāh is the greatest. I testify that there is no god but Allāh. I testify that there is no god but Allāh. I testify that Muhammad, ﷺ is Allāh’s prophet. I testify that Muhammad, ﷺ is Allāh’s prophet. Come for Salāh. Come for Salāh. Come for success. Come for success. Allāh is the greatest, Allāh is the greatest. There is no god but Allāh.

70 Salāh is better than sleep.

71 Salāh has started.
Desirable acts of Saläh-call

The following acts are desirable in Saläh-call:

1. The Saläh-caller should be in a state of Ablution.
2. He should be knowledgeable about the Tradition and the times of Salāhs.
3. He should be pious.
4. He should face the holy Ka’bah at the time of the Salāh-call.
5. He should put his forefingers inside his ears.
6. He should turn his face right when saying حَيَّ عَلَى الصَّلََةِ (Hayya àlas̈ s̈aläh) and left when saying حَيَّ عَلَى الفَلََحِ (Hayya àlal falāḥ).
7. He should separate the times of Salāh-call and Salāh-start-call by a duration in which the regulars at the congregation are able to come for the Salāh. But if he fears missing the time of the Salāh, he will not delay the Salāh after the Salāh-call.
8. He should separate the Salāh-call and the Salāh-start-call by a duration in which three small verses may be recited or in which one may walk three steps.
9. It is desirable for a person listening to Salāh-call to stop his work and say in reply what the Salāh-call says except that when the Salāh-caller says حَيَّ عَلَى الصَّلََةِ (Hayya àlas̈ s̈aläh) and حَيَّ عَلَى الفَلََحِ (Hayya àlal falāḥ), he should say in reply لَا حَوْلَ وَلََ فُوْرَةٌ إلََّ بِا (Lä Ḫaula wa lä quwwata illä billäh) and when the Salāh-caller says المسَلََةُ خَيْرٌ م ِنَ النَّوْمِ (Aṣ̈ Salätu khairum minan naum) in Fajr, he should say صَدَقْتَ وَبَرَرْتَ (S̈adaqta wa bararta).
10. It is desirable for the Salāh-caller and the listeners to say this invocation after the Salāh-call has completed:

Allāhumma rabba häzihi-d da’wat-it tämmati was̈ šalāt-il qā’imati, ati Muḥammada nil wasilata wal fažilata, wab’ath-hu maqāmam mahmuda nil-lazï wa’atta hu.  

Avoidable acts of Salāh-call

The following acts are to be avoided in Salāh-call:

1. Saying Salāh-call in a singing tone
2. Salāh-call Salāh-start-call by a person not in a state of minor de jure Filth
3. Salāh-call by a person in a state of major de jure Filth
4. Salāh-call by a non-discerning child
5. Salāh-call by an insane person
6. Salāh-call by an inebriated person
7. Salāh-call by a woman
8. Salāh-call by a habitual sinner
9. Salāh-call by a sitting person

---

72 When the Salāh-callers stops for breath between two sentences
73 There is neither any might nor any power except with Allāh. (EQ 586)
74 You have said the truth and done the right thing. (EQ 5442)
75 O Allāh! Lord of this perfect call (of not ascribing partners to You) and of the regular prayer which is going to be established! Kindly give Muhammad the right of intercession and superiority and send him (on the Day of Judgment) to the best and the highest place in Paradise which You promised him. (EQ 587, Bukhārī 614)
10. Talking by the caller in the midst of a Salāh-call or a Salāh-start-call
   If the caller talks in the midst of a Salāh-call, it is desirable for him to repeat the Salāh-call.

   If he talks in the midst of a Salāh-start-call, he should not repeat the Salāh-start-call.

11. Salāh-call and Salāh-start-call for Zuhr on a Friday in a city
   If a person has missed more than one Salāh and is late-performing them, he should say Salāh-call and Salāh-start-call for the first Salāh. Then for the remaining Salāhs, he has the option of saying both Salāh-call and Salāh-start-call or saying only Salāh-start-call.
Constituents of Salah

Prerequisites for validity of Salāh

There are some things which are not included in the essence of Salāh but are necessary for validity of Salāh. If one of these things is missed, Salāh will not be valid. These things are called prerequisites of Salāh and they are six:

1. Purity: Salāh will not be valid without Purity.
   The scope of Purity includes:
   a. Purity of body from de jure Filth: The body of the Salāh-performer should be Pure from both minor and major de jure Filths.
   b. Purity of body from de facto Filth: The body of the Salāh-performer should be free of de facto Filth in an inexcusable quantity.
   c. Purity of garments: The garments on the Salāh-performer’s body should be free of de facto Filth in an inexcusable quantity.
   d. Purity of place: The place where the person is performing Salāh should be Pure from de facto Filth.
      “Purity of place” requires that that the places where the Salāh-performer’s feet, hands, knees and forehead will be falling on the ground at the time of Prostration should be Pure.

2. Covering the organs to be hidden: Salāh will not be valid if he does not hide the organs to be hidden when he is capable of it.
   It is necessary that the organs to be hidden should remain hidden from the start of the Salāh till the end.
   If a quarter or more of an organ to be hidden is uncovered before starting the Salāh, the Salāh will not be valid.
   If a quarter or more of an organ to be hidden gets uncovered during Salāh for a period in which the smallest Salāh-essential may be performed, then his Salāh will become invalid.
   • Limits of organs to be covered for man: from the navel to the end of knees. Knees are organs to be hidden unlike the navel which is not an organ to be hidden.
   • Limits of organs to be covered for free woman: entire body excluding the face, palms and feet
   • Limits of organs to be covered for slave woman: from navel to the end of knees in addition to her abdomen and back

3. Facing the holy Ka’bah: Salāh will not be valid without facing the Ka’bah if he is capable of it.
   • The exact position of Ka’bah: It is the direction-to-face for a person who is in the holy city of Makkah and is able to view the Ka’bah from his place.
   • The general direction of Ka’bah: It is the direction-to-face for a person who is unable to view the Ka’bah.

76 In other words, he should be in an ablutionally Pure state.
The general direction of Ka‘bah is also the direction-to-face for a person away from the holy city of Makkah.

If a person is unable to face the stipulated direction owing to a disease or fear from an enemy, it is permissible for him to face whichever direction he is capable of.

4. **Time of Salāh:** Salāh will not be valid before its start-time. The times of Salāhs have been described in detail previously.

5. **Intention:** Salāh is not valid without intention. If the Salāh is obligatory, specifying it is compulsory, like intending for Zuhr or Âsr.

Similarly, if the Salāh is compulsory, specifying it is compulsory, like intending for Witr or Îd Salāh.

If the Salāh is supererogatory, specifying it is not a prerequisite. Intending just for a Salāh is enough.

If the Salāh-performer is an Imām-follower, it is necessary for him to intend to follow the Imām in the Salāh.

6. **Prohibitive words of Salāh**

   This means that the Salāh should be started with a remembrance formula meant only for Allāh, like saying: َللُ أكْبَرُ (Allāhu akbar), َللُ أعْظَمُ (Allāhu a`z̅am), or ِسبَحَانَ اللِ (Sub-ḧänalläh).

   The Salāh-performer should not separate his intention of Salāh and the starting Takbīr by an act that is contrary to the Salāh like eating or drinking.

   It is a prerequisite that the person should:
   
   - Say the prohibitive words before bending for Bowing.
   - Not make the intention after the prohibitive words.
   - Say َللُ أكْبَرُ (Allāhu akbar) in a manner that he himself is able to hear it.

**Other rulings related to Prerequisites of Salāh**

If a person does not find anything with which to remove de facto Filth, he should perform Salāh with the Filth on him. He does not need to repeat the Salāh.

If a person does not find a garment to hide his organs to be covered nor grass or clay, then he should perform Salāh without garments. He does need to repeat the Salāh.

---

77 Also called starting Takbīr and prohibitive Takbīr. “Prohibitive” means that several permissible acts like walking, talking, eating, etc. become prohibited as soon as the Salāh-performer says these words.

78 Allāh is the greatest.

79 Allāh is the supreme.

80 Glory be to Allāh.

81 Or any other prohibitive word.
If a quarter of the person’s garment is Pure, performing Salāh without clothes is not permissible for him.

If a person’s garment is Filthy, then performing Salāh in the Filthy garment is preferable to performing it without clothes.

A person without clothes when performing Salāh should sit and spread his legs towards the Salāh-direction and should Bow and Prostrate through gesture.

Salāh is permissible on the Pure side of a Filthy cloth-sheet if the sheet is so large that shaking one of its ends does not cause movement in the other end.

Salāh is permissible on a mattress whose top surface is Pure and bottom surface Filthy.

If a person is confused about the Salāh-direction and he is unable to find another person whom to ask about it nor does he find anything that can help him in determining the Salāh-direction, then he should perform Salāh on the basis of his guess.

If he performed Salāh based on his guess but later it turned out that his guess about the Salāh-direction was wrong, then also his Salāh will be valid.

If he comes to know of his error during his Salāh, he should turn towards the Salāh-direction immediately and continue with his Salāh.

If several of the organs to be hidden get bare during Salāh and if the total of bare parts adds up to the size of a quarter of the smallest bare organ-to-be-hidden, then his Salāh will be invalid.

But if the total of the bare parts is less than the above mentioned amount, his Salāh will be valid.
Essentials of Salāḥ

There are five essentials\(^{82}\) of Salāḥ which are also its obligatory constituents.

If a person misses one of them, his Salāḥ will be invalid no matter whether he missed it knowingly or unknowingly.

1. **Standing:** Salāḥ that does not include standing will be invalid if the person is capable of standing.
   Standing is obligatory in obligatory and compulsory Salāḥs.
   Standing is not obligatory in supererogatory Salāḥs.

   So a supererogatory Salāḥ is valid without standing even if the person is capable of standing.

2. **Qur’ān recitation:** of at least a small verse. A Salāḥ without recitation is invalid.
   Qur’ān recitation is obligatory in two Salāḥ-units of obligatory Salāḥs.
   Qur’ān recitation is obligatory in all the Salāḥ-units of compulsory and supererogatory Salāḥs.

   If a Salāḥ-performer is an Imām-follower, then he is relieved of the duty of Qur’ān recitation. In fact, it is avoidable for him.

3. **Bowing:** Salāḥ without Bowing is invalid.
   The obligatory amount of Bowing is established by lowering his head in a manner that his body gets closer to the state of perfect Bowing than to the state of standing.
   As for perfect Bowing, it is established by lowering the back in the forward direction to the extent that the head is in level with the posterior.

4. **Prostration:** Salāḥ is invalid unless one performs two Prostrations in every Salāḥ-unit.
   The obligatory amount of Prostration is established by placing upon the ground a part of the forehead, one of the palms, one of the knees and some part of a side of one of the feet.
   The perfect Prostration is established by placing both hands, both knees, both feet, the forehead and the nose upon the ground.
   Prostration is valid only if done upon a thing on which the forehead can rest stably such that if the person forces down his forehead it does not go lower than the initial position.
   Prostrating only upon the nose and excluding the forehead will not be valid unless he is suffering from an excusable difficulty.
   If a person prostrates upon his palm or upon a side of his garment, it will be valid but avoidable.

---

\(^{82}\) The Arabic word for “essentials” is “arkān” which is the plural of “rukn”. “Rukn” is something which constitutes the essence of a thing and whose obligation is based on an evidence beyond doubt.
For the validity of Prostration, it is a prerequisite that the place of prostrating the head should not be higher than the place of the feet by more than half cubit.

If the place of prostrating the head is higher by more than half cubit, Salāh will not be valid unless it is highly overcrowded there.

5. The last sitting for the duration of Tashahhud-recitation

- Some Islamic jurists have included “coming out of the Salāh by a voluntary act” in the essentials, but according to authoritative scholars, it is not obligatory, rather it is compulsory.
Compulsory acts of Salāh

The following acts are Compulsory in salahs.

If a person misses any of the following no matter unknowingly, his Salāh will be deficient and the deficiency can be compensated for by two prostrations of forgetfulness.

If a person misses any of these knowingly, repeating the Salāh will be Compulsory for him. If he does not repeat, he will be a sinner.

1. Takbīr: Starting the Salāh by the particular words of Takbīr (Allāhu akbar)
2. Fātihah: Reciting the Qurānic chapter of Fātihah (chapter 1) in the first two Salāh-units of Obligatory Salāhs and in all the Salāh-units of Compulsory and supererogatory Salāhs
3. Additional chapter: Additional recitation of a small Qurānic chapter or three small Qurānic verses after Fātihah in the first two Salāh-units of Obligatory Salāhs and in all the Salāh-units of Compulsory and supererogatory Salāhs
4. Ordered recitation: Reciting the additional chapter after Fātihah
5. Prostrations without gap: Performing the second prostration after the second prostration without any gap
6. Temperance: Performing all the mandatory acts with temperance and tranquility
7. First sitting: The first sitting for a period in which it is possible to recite Tashahhud (Tahiyyāt)
8. Reciting Tashahhud: Reciting Tashahhud in the first sitting as also in the second sitting (See footnote 107.)
9. Standing up for the third Salāh-unit: Standing up immediately, without delay for the third Salāh-unit after completing Tashahhud
10. Salām: Exiting the Salāh with the words of (As salāmu ālaikum wa rahmatullāh) twice
11. Qunūt of Witr: Reciting the Qunūt invocation in the third Salāh-unit of Witr after completing Fātihah and the additional chapter (See footnote 108.)
12. Extra Takbīrs: The extra Takbīrs (Allāhu akbar) in the Salāhs for the two Īds. They are said thrice in each Salāh-unit.
13. Takbīr of bowing: The takbīr before bowing in the second Salāh-unit of the two Īd-Salāhs
14. Audible recitation: Audible recitation by the Imām in both the Salāh-units of Fajr, Friday-Salāh, the two Īd-Salāhs; the first two Salāh-units of Zuhr, Asr, Maghrib and Ishā; and all the Salāh-units of Tarāwīh and Witr during Ramazān.

---

83 The Arabic word for Compulsory is “wājib”. It is a command whose being necessary is established by an evidence in which there is a sort of doubt, like the case when the evidence is tenable, not incontrovertible, e.g. news from a single source, or the case when the denotation of the text is tenable, e.g. due to a word with two or more meanings.
84 Allāh is the greatest.
85 Due to some other act of Salāh.
86 Peace and Allāh’s mercy be upon you.
A single Salāh-performer has the option of reciting audibly in these Salāhs or reciting inaudibly. However, reciting audibly is preferable for him in the above mentioned Salāh-units.

15. Inaudible recitation: Inaudible recitation by Imām and single Salāh-performer in all Salāh-units of Zuhr and Asr, the third Salāh-unit of Maghrib, the last two Salāh-units of Ishā, and all Salāh-units of supererogatory Salāhs performed during the day.

If a person misses reciting the additional chapters in the first two Salāh-units of Ishā, he should recite them in the last two after Fātihah audibly and then perform the prostrations of forgetfulness.

If a person misses Fātihah in the first two Salāh-units, he should not repeat them in the last two. Instead, he should perform the prostrations of forgetfulness to compensate for the omission.
Traditions of Salâh

The following acts are the Prophet’s traditions in Salâh which should be followed to make the Salâh perfect and to obey the Prophet’s Command: (Perform Salâh as you have seen me performing.) (EQ 603)

1. Standing straight at the time of saying the first Takbîr (Allâhu akbar) without lowering the head
2. Raising the palms to the level of the ears before the first Takbîr
3. Keeping the inner sides of the palms and fingers towards the Salâh-direction while raising the hands
4. Leaving the fingers in their natural state, i.e. a bit spread-out, while raising the hands. The fingers should neither be made to stick to each other nor to spread out to the maximum extent.
5. Keeping the right hand over the left below the navel
6. Keeping the inner side of the right palm over the outer side of the left palm while encircling the left wrist with his right little finger and thumb
7. Reciting extolment after keeping his hands below navel:
   سُبْحَانَكَ اللَّهُمَّ وَبِحَمْدِكَ وَتَبَارَكَ اسْمُكَ وَتَلَالِي جَدُّكَ وَلَ إِلَهَ غَيْرُكَ.
8. Saying أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنْ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ after this and before reciting Fâtihah
9. Saying بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ in every rak‘ah before reciting Fâtihah
10. Saying أمîn inaudibly at the completion of Fâtihah
11. Leaving a gap of four finger-widths between his feet
12. Reciting after Fâtihah Qur’anic chapters out of Tiwäl e Mufassal (chapters 49 to 85) in Fajr and Zuhr; chapters out of Ausät e Mufassal (chapters 86 to 98) in Asr and Ishâ; and chapters out of Qisär e Mufassal (chapters 99 to 114) in Maghrib

87 Allâh is the greatest.
88 A woman should raise her palms to the level of her shoulders before the first Takbîr.
89 A woman should place her palms over her breast.
90 The three right middle fingers will be placed over the back of the left wrist.
91 A woman should place the inner side of her right palm over the outer side of her left palm without encircling.
92 Extolment or Sanâ: O Allâh! You are without blemish, and You are praiseworthy. Your name is blessed and your glory is exalted. There is no God besides you. (EQ 25935)
93 I seek refuge with Allâh from Satan, the outcast. (Bukhâri 6115, EQ 5766)
94 An imâm-follower should not say A’ūzû billâhi minash shaitân-ir rajîm and Bismillâh-ir Rahmânir Rahîm. But if he has missed one or more rak‘ahs behind the imâm, then he should say A’ūzû billâhi minash shaitân-ir rajîm and Bismillâh-ir Rahmânir Rahîm in the first Salâh-unit that he performs after the imâm.
95 With the name of Allâh, the All-Merciful, the Very-Merciful.
96 (Allâh!) Accept this from us.
97 Tiwäl e Mufassal, Ausät e Mufassal and Qisär e Mufassal are the names given to different groups of chapters of the holy Qur’ân.
   • Tiwäl e Mufassal (long chapters of distinct verses): chapter 49 (Hujurât) to 85 (Burûj)
   • Ausät e Mufassal (medium-sized chapters of distinct verses): chapter 86 (Târiq) to 98 (Bayyinah)
13. Making the first Salâh-unit of Fajr longer than the second, only in Fajr
14. Saying Takbeer (Allâhu akbar) while bowing down
15. Holding his knees with his palms and spreading out the fingers completely in the state of bowing
16. Flattening his back and bringing his head in level with his posterior while keeping his shanks upright
17. Saying (Subhâna rabbîya hî azîm) during bowing at least thrice
18. Keeping apart his arms from his torso-sides while bowing, for males only
19. Saying (Samm a’llâhu liman hâmîdah) while raising the head from bowing, for imâmîs only.
   An imâm-follower should say inaudibly (Rabbanâ wa lakal hâmîd).
   A singleton should say both.
20. Saying takbîrs (Allâhu akbar) for prostrations
21. Keeping his knees on the ground first, then his hands, and then his face for Prostrations
22. Raising his face, then his hands, and then his knees while getting up from Prostrations
23. Keeping his face between his palms during Prostrations
24. Keeping apart his abdomen from his thighs, his elbows from his torso-sides and his arms from the ground surface during Prostrations
25. Keeping the fingers of his hands close together during Prostrations
26. Keeping his feet-toes facing the Salâh-direction during Prostrations
27. Saying (Subhâna rabbîya hî alâî) inaudibly at least thrice during Prostrations
28. Saying takbir (Allâhu akbar) for rising up from Prostrations
29. Standing up directly from the second Prostration without sitting or resting the hands on the ground. When there is some physical disability, then there is no harm in these acts
30. Keeping the hands over the thighs while sitting between the two Prostrations just as is done in the sitting posture for Tashahhud
31. Spreading down the left foot and keeping upright the right foot during the first sitting (after two Salâh-units) and the last sitting
32. Pointing with his right forefinger during Tashahhud. The forefinger is to be raised when saying (La ila hâ) (Lâ ila hâ) and lowered when saying (Allâhu). (Ilallâhu).
33. Reciting Fâtihah in the last two Salâh-units of Zuhr, Āsr and Ishâ, and the third Salâh-unit of Maghrib
34. Saying the supplication of blessings for the Prophet (sallallâhu âsâd) after Tashahhud in the last sitting

- Qisâr e Mufassal (short chapters of distinct verses): chapter 99 (Zilzâl) to the end, i.e. 114 (Nâs)
98 Glory be to my mighty Lord. (Muslim 772, EQ 8947)
99 Allâh heard those who sent praises to Him. (EQ 655, Bukhâri 689)
100 O our Lord! All the praises are for you. (EQ 655, Bukhâri 689)
101 Glory be to my Lord, most high. (Muslim 772, EQ 8947)
102 A woman should sit over her posterior (buttocks), place her thighs over the ground and extrude her left foot from beneath her right thigh.
103 Lâ ila hâ: There is no god; Ilallâhu: except Allâh.
104 The preferable supplication of blessings for the Prophet (sallallâhu âsâd) is:
35. After Saläh for the Prophet, he should supplicate using supplications of Qur’än and Hadîth-books. One such supplication is:

اِنِّي ظَلَمْتُ نَفْسِي ظُلْمًا كَثِيرًا وَلَا يُغْفِرُ الْذُّنُوبُ إِلَّا أَنْتَ فَاغْفِرْ لِي مَغْفِرَةً مِنْ عِنْدِكَ وَارْحَمْنِي إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ. (البخاري 387)

36. Turning his face right and left while saying (As salāmu `alaikum wa raḥmatulläh) each time

37. The imām should say the takbīrs (Allāhu akbar) for every posture change audibly while the imām-followers should say inaudibly.

38. The imām should say (As salāmu `alaikum wa raḥmatulläh) twice audibly and the imaam-followers should say them inaudibly.

39. The imām should intend men, angels who protect us and pious jinns while performing the two salāms (As salāmu `alaikum wa raḥmatulläh).

An imām-follower should also intend his imām along with the other beings when turning in the direction of the imām for salām.

A singleton should intend only the angels with his salām.

40. The Salāh-performer should lower his voice during the second salām compared to the first salām.

41. Starting salāms from the right side and then turning to the left

42. The salām of the imām-follower should be along with the salaam of his imām.

43. An imām-follower who has missed some Salāh-units should wait for the imām to complete both his salāms. He should get up for completing his remaining Salāh-units only after the imām has completed both his salāms.

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، كَمَا صَلَّيْتَ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ، وَعَلَى آلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ، الَّذِي يَعْلَمُ مَا بَيْنَ دُ灵َّ، وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، كَمَا بَارَكْتَ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ، وَعَلَى آلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ. (البخاري: 272)

Allāhumma s̈alli àlä Mu•hammadin wa àlä äli Mu•hammadin kamä s̈allaita àlä Ibrähîma wa àlä äli Ibrähîma, innaka hameedum majîd. Allāhumma bârik àlä Mu•hammadin wa àlä äli Mu•hammadin kamä bârâkta àlä Ibrähîma wa àlä äli Ibrähîma, innaka hameedum majîd .

O Allâh! Send Your Mercy on Muhammad and on the family of Muhammad, as You sent Your Mercy on Abraham and on the family of Abraham, for You are the Most Praise-worthy, the Most Glorious. O Allâh! Send Your Blessings on Muhammad and the family of Muhammad, as You sent your Blessings on Abraham and on the family of Abraham, for You are the Most Praise-worthy, the Most Glorious. (EQ 3168)

105 O Allâh! I have wronged my soul very much (oppressed myself), and none forgives the sins but You; so please bestow Your Forgiveness upon me and have mercy upon me. No doubt, You are the Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful. (EQ 798, 6970)

106 Peace and Allâh’s Mercy be upon you. (Bukhārī 3326, EQ 3126)

62 of 177
Desirable acts of Salāḥ

The following acts are desirable in Salāḥ. Observing them is commendable and they make the Salāḥ perfect.

1. A man should pull out his palms from under his chador (robe) or from his sleeves while raising his hands for the first takbīr. A woman should not pull out her palms.

2. A prayer-performer should look at his place of Prostration while standing in Salāḥ.

3. He should look at the top of his feet while Bowing.

4. He should look at his nose-tip during Prostration.

5. He should look at his lap while sitting.

6. He should look at his shoulders while performing salāms at the end.

7. He should try to suppress cough and yawn as much as possible.

8. If he feels compelled to yawn, then he should cover his mouth with his palm.

9. He should recite in the first and the last sittings of Salāhs the Tashahhud reported from Abdullah bin Mas‘ūd.

10. He should recite in the last Salāḥ-unit of Witr specifically the invocation Allāhumma innā nasta‘īnuka …

---

**107** The Tashahhud reported from Abdullah bin Mas‘ūd is:

التيهات لله والصلاة والطيبات السلام عليك أنتم النبي صلى الله وباركائنا ومنكم من قامة بثوابنا. إن لا إله إلا الله وأنتسيح ورسول الله

**108** This is the Qunūt invocation which in its complete form is as follows:

لا إله إلا الله والصلاة والسلام عليكم أنتي النبي رحمتك وبركاتك وعليكم السلام وعليكم عزاء الصالحين.

Allāhumma innā nasta‘īnuka wa nastagfiruka, wa nu‘minu bika wa natawakkalu āliaika, wa nuthnī āliaik al-khaira, wa nashkuruka wa là naffuruka, wa nakhlū wa natruku ma‘ṣafuruka. Allāhumma iyyāka na‘budu, wa la aṣṣallī wa nasjudu, wa ilaika nasā wa nađīd, wa nājī rāhmata wa naḵ̄ahā āzābaka, inā āzābā bīl kuffārī mulḥiq.

O Allāh! We seek help from You. We seek Your forgiveness. We believe in You. We rely on You. We praise You in the best manner. We thank You and are not ungrateful to You. We separate and break up from all who disobey You. O Allāh! We worship You and to You do we pray and prostrate. To You do we flee and we are quick in doing so. We hope for Your mercy and we fear Your punishment. For verily, Your punishment overtakes the Disbelievers.
Invalidators of Salāh

Salāh is broken when any of the following happens during Salāh:

1. One of the prerequisites of the Salāh is not present.
2. The Salāh-performer misses one of the essentials of Salāh.
3. He makes conversation during Salāh no matter it happened intentionally, unknowingly or mistakenly.
4. He supplicates in words which are similar to human conversation, e.g. saying: “Allāh! Marry me to so and so woman.”, “Allāh! Give me an apple to eat.”
5. He greets a person by saying salām or responds to a greeting by tongue or through handshake. It does not matter whether the greeting occurred intentionally, unknowingly or mistakenly. If he responds to a greeting of salām by gesture, then his Salāh will not be broken.
6. He does a major non-Salāh act.109
7. He turns away his chest from the Salāh-direction.110
8. He eats or drinks something, even if the thing is less in quantity.
9. He eats something that had stuck to his teeth during Salāh and the thing was equal in size to a gram-grain or larger.111
10. He hems without need.112
11. He sighs, whines, groans or wails not on account of Allāh’s fear.113 A sick person who is unable to control his groans or sighs is excluded from this rule. His Salāh will not be broken owing to these.
12. He weeps with a loud sound and the weeping was not owing to Allāh’s fear or due to the mention of Paradise or Hell, rather it was due to some pain or calamity.
13. The organs to be hidden get bare during Salāh and remain so for a period in which a small essential of Salāh may be performed.
14. De facto Filth is found on his body, garments or the place of Salāh and it remains there for the period of a small Salāh-essential.
15. He becomes insane during Salāh.
16. He loses consciousness during Salāh.
17. The sun rises during Fajr Salāh.
18. Noon begins during ʿId Salāh.
19. The time of Asr starts during Friday Salāh.
20. He was performing Salāh with Tayammum and during the Salāh, he found water or became capable of using water.
21. His Ablutional purity got invalid due to his own act114 or due to some other person’s act.
22. He elongates the starting hamz̈ah of Allāhu akbar.115

---

109 A major non-Salāh act is one which appears to an observer that the performer of this act is not in Salāh.
110 However, if an Ablution-invalidator happened to a Salāh-performer and he turned back to go out for Ablution, his Salāh will not be broken.
111 If the thing that has been eaten was smaller than a gram-grain, his Salāh will not be broken.
112 If he hems on account of some excusably difficulty, or to improve his voice, or to warn his imām of a mistake that he made, his Salāh will not be broken.
113 If he cries due to Allāh’s fear or owing to the mention of Paradise or Hell, his Salāh will not be broken.
114 If an Ablution-invalidator occurred to him without his intention, his Salāh will not be broken. He should perform Ablution and continue with his Salāh.
24. He performs a Salāh-essential in the state of sleep and on getting up from sleep, he does not repeat the essential.
25. The Salāh-performer is a person of tartīb\textsuperscript{116} and while performing a Salāh, he remembers that there is a Salāh which he has yet to perform.
26. The imām makes a person who is incapable of doing the job of imām his deputy during Salāh.
27. He thinks (he is not sure) that an Ablution-invalidator has occurred to him, so he goes out of the mosque, passes by rows of Salāh-performers, or crosses the Sutrah\textsuperscript{117} in case it is not a mosque.
28. He laughs audibly during Salāh.
29. He pulls out any or both of his thick socks during Salāh no matter whether it is done with a minor non-Salāh act or a major non-Salāh act\textsuperscript{118}.
30. An Imām-follower precedes his Imām in performing a Salāh-essential such that he is not with the Imām during that Salāh-essential even for a moment.
   For example, the Imām-follower bows and then raises his head from Bowing before his Imām starts that Bowing, then he does not repeat the Bowing with him.
31. A major de jure Filth occurs to him during Salāh, no matter whether it occurs on account of looking at a woman, thinking about her or nocturnal emission.

\textsuperscript{115} Elongating the starting hamzah changes the meaning. It now means: “Is Allāh great?” which indicates a question or doubt.
\textsuperscript{116} A person of Tartīb is one who does not have a missed Salāh upon him. All the Salāh that became obligatory upon him in his life, he either performed them on time or has late-performed them by now.
\textsuperscript{117} Sutrah is any object like whip-stick, etc. which is kept in front of a Salāh-performer in an open place to indicate to passers-by passing in front of the Salāh-performer that they should not pass by at a closer distance.
\textsuperscript{118} A major non-Salāh act is one which appears to an observer that the performer of this act is not in Salāh. Any other non-Salāh act done during Salāh is a minor non-Salāh act.
**Acts which do not invalidate the Salāḥ**

Salāḥ is not broken due to the following acts:

1. He unknowingly performs Salām to come out of the Salāḥ\(^{119}\).
2. A person passes by him through his place of Prostration.
3. He eats something that had stuck to his teeth and its size was less than that of a gram-grain.
4. He looks at a transcript and understands its meaning.

---

\(^{119}\) He thought that he had completed the Salāḥ but soon after the Salām, he remembers that he has yet to complete one or more Salāḥ-units.
Detestable acts of Salāh

The following acts are detestable in Salāh. A Salāh-performer should avoid them else his Salāh will get marred with defect.

1. Intentionally leaving out a Tradition of Salāh
2. Playing with the garment or a part of one’s body
3. Performing Salāh in shabby garments
4. Reclining upon something during Salāh
5. Turning one’s neck right and left without need
6. Performing Salāh facing a person
7. Performing Salāh when suppressing with difficulty urine, excrement or flatus
8. Performing Salāh on someone else’s land without his (explicit or implicit) permission
9. Performing Salāh facing fire or stove in which fire is present
10. Performing Salāh in a lowly place like bathroom, toilet
11. Performing Salāh on a road
12. Performing Salāh in a graveyard
13. Performing Salāh close to Filth
14. Performing Salāh with Filth in small quantity with which Salāh is permissible
15. Performing Salāh in a garment with picture of an animate being
16. Performing Salāh at a place with picture, no matter whether the picture is above his head, in front of him or behind him
17. Crackling one’s fingers
18. Interlocking one’s fingers
19. Sitting cross-legged without an excusable difficulty
20. Squatting
21. Laying down one’s arms during Prostrations
22. Placing one’s hands upon waists
23. Rolling up one’s sleeves from the arms
24. Performing Salāh only in lower garment like lungi or trousers despite being capable of wearing kurta (shirt)
25. Performing Salāh with bare head without any excusable difficulty or expediency
26. Performing Salāh behind a Salāh-row in which there is enough gap for one person
27. Counting Qur’ānic verses or remembrance formulas on fingers
28. Wiping off dust which was not hurting him from one’s forehead during Salāh
29. Restricting oneself to prostration upon forehead only without any excusable difficulty
30. Performing Salāh in the presence of meal while his heart is inclined towards it
31. Fixing a Qur’ānic chapter such that he does not recite any other chapter

---

120 However, if the picture is so small that if placed at the place of Prostration, the person standing in Salāh is unable to recognize it, or if the picture is headless or of an inanimate thing, then Salāh is not detestable in that place.
121 Here, squatting means sitting like a dog with posteriors on the ground.
122 If he keeps his head bare due to some excusable difficulty or to show humility to Allāh, then his Salāh will not be detestable.
123 By not letting his nose touch the floor.
32. Repeated recitation of the same chapter in the two Salāḥ-units of an obligatory Salāḥ in the case when he remembers other chapters too
33. Intentionally reciting the chapters against their order in obligatory Salāḥs
34. Making the recitation in the second Salāḥ-unit longer than in the first to an excessive degree
35. Turning one’s fingers or toes away from Salāḥ-direction during Prostration, etc.
36. Prostration upon one’s turban or upon an animate being’s picture
37. Reciting two Qur’ānic chapters in an obligatory Salāḥ which are separated by a small chapter, e.g. reciting Takāthur (chapter 102) in the first Salāḥ-unit and Humazah (chapter 104) in the second and leaving out the chapter of Asr (chapter 103) lying between them
38. Not placing the palms upon the knees while Bowing
39. Not placing the palms upon the thighs during Tashahhud-sittings and while sitting between two Prostrations
40. Yawning
   If yawn overcomes him during Salāḥ, he should cover his mouth by placing the back of his right palm over his mouth.
41. Responding to a Salām-greeting by gesture
42. Catching hold of a louse and killing it
43. Performing Salāḥ when he has tied his head with a kerchief keeping the centre of his head bare
44. Performing Salāḥ with braided hair
45. Raising the front or back of his garments during Bowing or Prostration fearing it might get sullied by dust
46. Letting a cloth hang down freely, i.e. putting it over his head or shoulder and leaving its sides free by not tying it together
47. Letting his lungi or trousers hang lower than his ankles
48. Bowing before finishing recitation and completing it while Bowing
49. Standing of an Imām completely inside the Imām-niche in a mosque without any excusable difficulty
50. Standing of Imām alone without any excusable difficulty on a raised platform higher by a cubit or more than the normal ground, or in a depressed place lower by a cubit or more than the normal ground. But if one more person from amongst the Imām-followers stands with him in that place, the Salāḥ will not be detestable.
51. Shutting one’s eyes without any expediency
52. Raising one’s sight towards the sky

Non-detestable acts of Salāḥ

The following acts if done in Salāḥ are not detestable:

124 If he fixes a Qur’ānic chapter for a Salāḥ due to an excusable difficulty or to get the blessing of following the holy Prophet Muhammad in reciting that particular chapter, then his Salāḥ will not be detestable.
125 Like reciting chapter 109 before chapter 101. But if he goes against the order forgetfully, then it will not be detestable.
126 If he makes the second longer than the first by two or three verses, then it is not detestable.
127 Tying up the hair of his head in this way at the front or back of his head
128 If the Imām stands outside the Imām-niche and prostrates inside it, or he stands completely inside the Imām-niche due to lack of space outside, it will not be detestable.
129 If he shuts his eyes to increase his concentration in the Salāḥ, this act will not be detestable.
1. Looking here and there with eyes without turning one’s face
2. Performing Salāh facing a copy of the holy Qur'ān
3. Performing Salāh facing a person who is sitting and engaged in conversation
4. Performing Salāh facing a candle or lamp
5. Repeating the same Qur'ānic chapter in two Salāh-units of a supererogatory Salāh
6. Wiping off dust or weeds from one’s forehead after completing the Salāh
   Same will be the ruling if one wipes off dust or weeds during Salāh if it was hurting him or
   distracting him from Salāh.
7. Killing a snake or scorpion if he feared harm from it
8. Shaking off his garments while Bowing or Prostrating to prevent it from sticking to his body
9. Prostrating on a carpet containing pictures of animate beings provided he does not prostrate on
   them
10. Performing Salāh facing a sword suspended from the ceiling
Manner of performing Salāḥ

When you plan to perform a Salāḥ, stand up and raise your hands to the level of your ears with the intention of performing the Salāḥ. Say: أَكْبَرُ اَللُّ (Allāhu akbar130). Place your right hand upon your left below your navel immediately after the first Takbīr, then recite: سُبْحَانَ اللَّهُمَّ وَبِحَمْدِكَ وَتَبَارَكَ اسْمُكَ وَتَلَالَى جَدُّكَ ولَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُنَّاكَ. (Subḥānak-allāhumma wa biḥamdika wa tabārak-asmuka wa ta`ālā jadduka wa lā ilāha ghairuk.131)

Say inaudibly: أَعُوذُ بِاللَِّّ مِنْ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ (A`üzu billāhi minash shaiẗän ir rajīm132).

Say inaudibly: بِسْمِ اللَِّّ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ (Bismillāh-ir Raḥmānir Raḥīm133).

Recite the Qurānic chapter of Fāṭihah. After completing it, say inaudibly: آمِيْن (Ämïn134), then recite another Qurānic chapter, or at least three short Qurānic verses or one long verse. Go for bowing, saying: أَكْبَرُ اَللُّ (Allāhu akbar), flattening your back with your posterior and holding your knees with your palms while keeping your fingers spread out. Say in the state of bowing: سُبْحَانَ رَبِيَ الْلَظِيمِ (Subḥāna rabbiyal `āzīm135) at least thrice. Then raise your head from bowing, saying: سَمِعَ اللَّّ مَنْ حَمِدَهُ (Sami`allāhu liman Ḫamidah136) and when standing straight, say: رَبَّنَا وَ لَكَ الْحَمْدُ (Rabbanä wa lakal ḧamd137). But if you are an Imām-follower, you should say only “Rabbanä wa lakal ḧamd” (Allāhu akbar) and placing first your knees upon the ground, then your hands and then your face between your palms.

Perform prostration with your nose and forehead in tranquility keeping your abdomen apart from your thighs and your upper arms separated from your sides when there is not much crowd. Keep your fingers and your toes facing the Salāḥ-direction and say during the prostration: سُبْحَانَ رَبِيَ الْعَلَى (Subḥāna rabbiyal a`lä141) at least thrice.

---

130 Allāh is the greatest.
131 O Allāh! You are without blemish, and You are praiseworthy. Your name is blessed and your glory is exalted. There is no God besides you. (EQ 25935)
132 An Imām-follower should not say “A`üzu billāhi minash shaiẗän ir rajīm” because this is meant for Qurān-recitation and the Imām-follower does not have to recite. The Imām and the singleton should say this only in the first Salāḥ-unit.
133 I seek refuge with Allāh from Satan, the outcast. (Bukhārī 6115, EQ 5766)
134 An Imām-follower should not say “Bismillāh-ir Raḥmānir Raḥīm”. The Imām and the singleton should say this in every Salāḥ-unit before reciting Fāṭihah.
135 With the name of Allāh, the All-Merciful, the Very-Merciful. (Tirmīzī 245, EQ3.41: 26104)
136 (Allāh!) Accept this from us.
137 Glory be to my mighty Lord! (Muslim 772, EQ 8947)
138 The Imām should say “Sami`allāhu liman Ḫamidah”, the Imām-follower should say “Rabbanä wa lakal Ḫamd”, and the singleton should say both.
139 Allāh heard those who sent praises to Him. (EQ 655, Bukhārī 689)
140 O our Lord! All the praises are for you. (EQ 655, Bukhārī 689)
141 Glory be to my Lord, most high! (Muslim 772, EQ 8947)
Say (Allāhu akbar) raising your head from the first prostration and sit on folded knees, at ease and in tranquility between the two prostrations, keeping your palms over your thighs. Again, say (Allāhu akbar) for the second prostration and say سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيَ الْعَلِيْ (Subhāna rabbiyal a`lä) at least thrice in the second prostration too.

Raise your head saying (Allāhu akbar) and stand upright without taking support from the ground with your palms and without sitting in the process.

Thus, completes your first Salāh-unit.

Do in the second Salāh-unit all that you did in the first, except that you should not raise your palm in the beginning, nor recite "A`üzu billāhi minash shaiẗän-ir rajïm". On completing the second prostration of the second Salāh-unit, spread down your left foot and sit upon it. Keep your right foot upright making its toes face the Salāh-direction. Keep your palms over your thighs with your fingers a little spread out.

Recite the Tashahhud that has been reported from Abdulläh bin Mas’ūd: التَّحِيَّاتُ للَِِّّ وَالصَّلَوَاتُ وَالطَّي ِبَاتُ السَّلََمُ عَلَيْكَ أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ وَرَحْمَةُ اللَِّّ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ
السَّلََمُ عَلَيْنَا وَعَلَى عِبَادِ اللَِّّ الصَّالِحِ
أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَ إِلَهَ إِلَّ اللَُّّ وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ (البخاري ٢:٨، ٧٨:٧)

Point towards your front with your forefinger at “Ash-hadu al lä iläha illalläh”. For this, raise your forefinger towards your front when you say “lä iläha” and put it down while saying “illalläh”.

If the Salāh consists only of two Salāh-units like the Salāh of Fajr, then say Salāh (prayer of blessing) for the Prophet,ﷺ after this Tashahhud. For this purpose, say: اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، كَمَآ صَلَّيْتَ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ، وَعَلَى آلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ، إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ، اللَّهُمَّبَارِكُ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، كَمَا بَارَكْتَ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ، وَعَلَى آلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ، إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ. (البخاري ٣٢٦)

Allāhumma šalli allā Muḥammadiñ wa allā äli Muḥammadin kamä šallaita allā Ibrähïma wa allā äli Ibrähïma, innaka ḥameedum majid. Allāhumma bärîk allā Muḥammadiñ wa allā äli Muḥammadin kamä bärakta allā Ibrähïma wa allā äli Ibrähïma, innaka ḥameedum majid143.

Then pray with one of the supplications reported in the Qurān or Hadith-books, e.g.144

---

142 All the compliments, prayers and good things are due to Allāh. Peace be on you, O Prophet, and Allāh’s mercy and blessings be on you. Peace be on us and on the true pious slaves of Allāh. I testify that none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh and I also testify that Muhammad is His slave and His Apostle. (EQ 796).

143 O Allāh! Send Your Mercy on Muhammad and on the family of Muhammad, as You sent Your Mercy on Ibrāhîm and on the family of Ibrāhîm, for You are the Most Praise-worthy, the Most Glorious. O Allāh! Send Your Blessings on Muhammad and the family of Muhammad, as You sent your Blessings on Ibrāhîm and on the family of Ibrāhîm, for You are the Most Praiseworthy, the Most Glorious. (EQ 3168)

144 If you like, you may recite this supplication: اللَّهُمَّ اطْلَعْتُ نَفْسِي طَلَّنَاءاً كَثِيرًا وَلَا يَغْفِرُ الْذَّنُوبُ إِلَّآ أَنْتَ فَاحْفَزْنِي لِمَغْفِرَةَ مِنْ عَذَابِكَ وَارْحَمْنِي إِلَّآ أَنْتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ (البخاري ٣٨٤، ٨٣٢)

---
Rabbanā ātinā fid duniyā ḥasanatañ wa fil ākhirati ḥasanatañ wa qinā āzāb-an när\textsuperscript{145}.

Then, turn your face right and left saying each time السَّلََمُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَرَحْمَةُ اللَِّّ (As salāmu `alaikum wa raḥmatullāh\textsuperscript{146}), intending to greet each time the Salāh-performers with you, the pious jinns and the angels who protect us.

If the Salāh consists of three or four Salāh-units, then do not continue the first sitting after Tashahhud. Rather stand up after completing the Tashahhud for the third Salāh-unit saying Allāhu akbar. Read only the chapter of Fātihah in the third Salāh-unit, and if the Salāh consists of four Salāh-units like Zuhr and Asr, then in the fourth Salāh-unit, too. After Fātihah, bow and prostrate as you did in the first two Salāh-units.

After the two prostrations of the last Salāh-unit, sit and recite Tashahhud in the last sitting, then say Salāh for the Prophet \textsuperscript{146} as previously explained.


\textsuperscript{145} Our Lord, give us good in this world and good in the Hereafter, and save us from the punishment of Fire.

\textsuperscript{146} Peace and Allāh’s Mercy be upon you. (Bukhārī 3326, EQ 3126)
Congregational Salāh

Virtue of congregational Salāh

Allāh said:

وَارْكَعْوا مَعَ الرَّجُلِينَ (القرآن ٢٣:٤)

Bow down with those who bow down.

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

صلاة الجماعة أفضل من صلاة الفدء سبع وعشرين درجة. (مسلم ٥٠)

Prayer performed in a congregation is twenty-seven degrees more excellent than prayer performed by a single person. (EQ 8611)

The holy Prophet ﷺ regularly attended congregational Salāhs throughout his life. Even in his sickness, he would not miss a congregational prayer. Only rarely did he miss it.

Similarly, his Companions used to attend congregational Salāh regularly. Only a person with excusable difficulty like physical disability, etc. or a well-known Hypocrite would remain behind a congregational Salāh. It has been reported that Ābdullāh bin Mās‘ūd said:

«لَقَدْ رَأَيْتُنَا وَمَا يَتَخَلَّفُ عَنِ الصَّلَاةِ إِلَّا مُنَافِقٌ قَدْ عَلِمَ نِفَاقُهُ أَوْ مَرَّيْسٌ، إِنْ كَانَ الْمَرِيضُ لِيَمْشِي بَيْنَ رَجُلَيْنِ حَتَّى يَأْتِيَ الصَّلَاةِ»، وقال: «إِنْ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ عَلَّمَنَا سُنَنَ الْهُدَى، وَإِنَّ مِنْ سُنَنِ الْهُدَى الصَّلَاةَ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ الَّذِي يُؤَذَّنُ فِيهِ. (مسلم ٦٩٤)

I have seen the time when no one stayed away from Salāh except a Hypocrite, whose hypocrisy was well known, or a sick man. But if a sick man could walk between two persons (i.e. with the help of two persons with one on each side) he would come to prayer. He (further) said: The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ taught us the paths of right guidance among which is prayer in the mosque in which the Salāh-call has been made. (EQ 8621)

Jamā‘ah (congregation) is the mutual association present among Imām and Imām-followers.

Congregation for Salāh is valid if one person is present along with Imām for all Salāhs except Friday Salāh.

Congregation for Friday Salāh is valid when three men other than Imām are present.

Congregational Salāh for five daily Salāhs for men is an emphasized Tradition for every individual, equivalent in importance to a compulsory act.

Missing a congregational Salāh is not permissible except on account of some excusable difficulty considered valid by the Shariah.

If a man has the habit of missing congregational Salāhs without excusable difficulty, he is a sinner.

Congregation is a prerequisite for Friday Salāh and Salāhs of the two Šids.
Hence, Friday Salāh and Īd Salāh will not be valid without congregation.

Congregation is an emphasized sufficiency Tradition\(^{147}\) for Tarāwīh Salāh and solar eclipse Salāh.

Congregation for Witr Salāh in the month of Ramazān is desirable.

Congregation for Witr Salāh in a month other than Ramazān if held regularly is undesirable.

If some people do this once or twice without making it a regular affair, then there is no harm.

Congregation for Salāh of lunar eclipse is detestable.

Congregation for supererogatory Salāh is detestable if it is held as a result of invitation and prior information.

If some people gather without invitation and prior information and start a congregational supererogatory Salāh without Salāh-call or Salāh-start-call, then it is not detestable.

A second congregation is detestable in the mosque of a locality for which an Imām and a Salāh-announcer have been appointed and in which the people of the locality have already performed congregational Salāh with Salāh-call and Salāh-start-call.

However, if the previous state has changed like if the Imām of the second congregation stands in a different place from that of the first Imām, then it will not be detestable.

**For whom congregation is emphasized Tradition**

Congregation is emphasized Tradition, equivalent in importance to a compulsory act for people in whom the following prerequisites are present:

1. He should be a man. Congregation is not a Tradition for a woman.
2. He should have attained puberty. Congregation is not a Tradition for a child.
3. He should be sane. Congregation is not a Tradition for an insane man.
4. He should be free of excusable difficulties. Congregation is not a Tradition for a man in excusable difficulty.
5. He should be free. Congregation is not a Tradition for a slave.

However, if any of the aforementioned excused persons – woman, child, insane person, person with excusable difficulty and slave – performs Salāh with congregation, their Salāh will be valid and they will be rewarded for attending the congregation.

**When attending congregation is not necessary**

Attending a congregation is not necessary if any of the following excuses is present:

\(^{147}\) Sufficiency Tradition is a Tradition which is fulfilled if only some people of a locality perform it. Every individual need not perform it.
1. It is raining heavily.
2. It is stone-cold and he fears that if goes out for mosque, he would fall sick or his sickness would aggravate.
3. There is too much mud on the road.
4. It is very dark.
5. Strong wind is blowing at night.\textsuperscript{148}
6. The person is sick.
7. He is blind.
8. He is so decrepit as to be unable to walk to mosque.
9. He is attending to a sick person, taking care of his needs.
10. He is finding it hard to suppress urine or excrement.
11. He is imprisoned, no matter whether it is on account of someone else’s right upon him or unjust.
12. He is without one or both legs.
13. He is suffering from a disease which disables him from walking, like paralysis.
14. Meal has been served for him and he is hungry, strongly inclined towards taking it.
15. He is preparing for a journey.
16. He fears loss of his wealth if he engages in congregational Salāh.
17. He fears departure of train or airplane if he engages in congregational Salāh.

**Prerequisites for validity of Imām-duty**

For validity of Imām-duty in a Salāh, it is a prerequisite that the Imām meets the following prerequisites\textsuperscript{149}:

2. Being a Muslim: A Disbeliever can never be an Imām.
3. Having attained puberty: A child cannot be an Imām.
5. Being capable of reciting the minimum amount of Qur’ānic verses necessary for validity of Salāh: If a person who is not as learned becomes the Imām for knowledgeable people, this Imām-duty will be invalid.
6. Should not be devoid of a Salāh prerequisite like Purity, covering of the organs to be hidden.
7. Should be free from excusable difficulties like chronic epistaxis\textsuperscript{150}, enuresis\textsuperscript{151} or flatus discharge.
8. Should have defect-free tongue: He should be able to pronounce the Arabic letters correctly. If a person mispronounces ‘rā’ as ‘gain’ or ‘lām’, or ‘sīn’ as ‘thā’, he cannot be Imām when people who can pronounce the letters correctly are Imām-followers.

**Who should be preferred for Imām-duty?**

The king and his deputy get the first preference for Imām-duty.

The duly appointed Imām of the mosque is to be preferred in that mosque specifically.

\textsuperscript{148} Strong wind is not an excuse in the day.
\textsuperscript{149} Otherwise, the Salāhs of both the Imām and the Imām-follower(s) will be invalid.
\textsuperscript{150} Nasal hemorrhage, nosebleed
\textsuperscript{151} Urinary incontinence, uncontrolled or involuntary discharge of urine
The owner of the house if eligible for Imâm-duty is to be preferred if the congregation is held in his house.

If none of the above – king, his deputy, duly appointed Imâm and the house-owner – is present among the people gathered, then the person to be given first preference for Imâm-duty is:

- The one who is most knowledgeable about the rulings of Salâh with respect to its validity and invalidity
- Then, the person who has memorized more of the holy Qur‘ân than others, provided he knows the general rulings of Salâh
- Then, the most pious
- Then, the most aged

If they are equal in all these criteria, then the person whom the gathered people elect for Imâm-duty will lead them in Salâh.

If the people differ in opinion, then the person supported by the majority of gathered people will be their Imâm.

If the people make a person other than the one to be preferred for Imâm-duty as their Imâm, then they have done wrong.

**When Imâm-duty or congregation is detestable**

1. A habitual sinner is made the Imâm.
2. A heretic is made the Imâm.
3. A blind man is made the Imâm. However, if he is the most preferable of the gathered people, then it is not detestable.
4. An illiterate person\(^\text{152}\) is made Imâm – no matter whether he is from a city or a village – in the presence of a knowledgeable person\(^\text{153}\).
5. A person whom people dislike due to some fault in him is made the Imâm.
6. Making the Salâh longer than the amount established by Tradition is detestable.
7. A congregation consisting only of women is detestable. But if they perform Salâh in congregation, then their female Imâm should stand in the middle of the row, not ahead of the row.
8. Attending of congregational Salâh by women in these times is detestable due to prevalence of evil.

**Manner of standing of Imâm-follower and ordering of Salâh-rows**

If there is only one person with the Imâm whether a man or a sentient child, he should stand on the right of the Imâm slightly behind him.

---

\(^{152}\) An illiterate person is one who has little or no knowledge of Qur‘ân, Hadith, Fiqh and the allied sciences, like an ignorant doctor, engineer, scientist, Nobel laureate, farmer, domestic help, etc.

\(^{153}\) A knowledgeable person is one who has knowledge of Islamic sciences.
If there are two or more men with the Imām, they should stand behind him.

Similarly, if a man and a child are there, they should stand behind the Imām.

If men, women, children and eunuchs gather for a congregational Salāh, then men’s row should be in the front, closest to the Imām, then children’s, then eunuchs’, then women’s.

The most preferable among the gathered men for Imām-duty should stand in the first row so that one of them may be made Imām in case an Ablution-invalidator occurs to the current Imām.

If there is only one child in the gathering, he should stand in men’s row.

If there is more than one child, they will stand in a row behind men’s rows. Men’s row should not be completed with them.

If a person comes for congregational Salāh and finds the Imām bowing, then if there is space in the row, he should first stand in the row, then say the first Takbīr even if he misses the Salāh-unit. He should not say the first Takbīr nor start bowing while behind the rows.

**Prerequisites for validity of Imām-following**

Following an Imām is valid if the following prerequisites are met:

1. The Imām-follower should intend to follow the Imām at the time of his first Takbīr of Salāh.
2. The Imām should stand a little ahead of his follower. At least his heels should be ahead of those of the Imām-followers.
3. The Imām’s Salāh should not be of a lower category than that of the Imām-follower. Following the Imām will not be valid if the Imām is performing a supererogatory Salāh and the Imām-follower an obligatory Salāh. Following him will be valid in the reverse case, i.e. if the Imām is performing an obligatory Salāh and the Imām-follower a supererogatory one.
4. The Imām and the Imām-follower, if both are performing obligatory Salāh, should be offering the obligatory Salāh of the same time. If the Imām is performing Zuhr and the Imām-follower Asr, then Imām-following will be invalid. In the reverse case also, Imām-following will be invalid.
5. There should not be a row of women between the Imām and male Imām-followers.
6. There should not be a river wide enough for a boat to sail in it between the Imām and his followers.
7. There should not be a road wide enough for a car or cart to pass through it between Imām and his followers.
8. There should not be a barrier between the Imām and his followers which hides the Imām’s posture-changes from the followers. However, if there is no confusion for the Imām-followers regarding the Imām’s posture-changes on account of the followers’ ability to listen to or view the changes, then following the Imām is valid.

If is valid for an Imām-follower with Ablutional purity to follow an Imām with Tayammum-purity.
It is valid for a person who has washed his feet in Ablution to follow an Imām who has wiped his feet with wet hands during Ablution.

It is valid for a person performing Salāh standing to follow an Imām performing Salāh in sitting posture\textsuperscript{154}.

It is valid for a straight-backed Imām-follower to follow a hunchback.

It is a valid for a person performing Salāh by gesture to follow an Imām performing Salāh likewise by gesture.

If the Imām’s Salāh gets invalid due to any reason, the Salāhs of Imām-followers too get invalid. It will be compulsory for the Imām to repeat the Salāh. He should announce that his Salāh was invalid so that the Imām-followers may also repeat their Salāhs.

\textbf{When the Imām-follower should follow his Imām and when he should not}

If the Imām stands up for the third Salāh-unit before the Imām-follower completes his Tashahhud, then he should not follow his Imām in standing. Instead he should complete the Tashahhud, then stand up.

When the Imām performs the ending Salām before the Imām-follower has completed his Tashahhud, the Imām-follower should not follow his Imām. Instead he should complete his Tashahhud, and then perform the ending Salām.

If the Imām performs an extra prostration\textsuperscript{155}, the Imām-follower should not follow him in the extra prostration.

If the Imām stands up forgetfully after the last sitting, the Imām-follower should not follow him in standing up.

If the Imām continues with the extra Salāh-unit and performs its prostration, the Imām-follower will then perform the ending Salām alone.

If the Imām stands up after the last Salāh-unit without performing the last sitting, the Imām-follower should not follow him. He should say aloud \textit{سِبْحَانَ اَللَّهِ} (Subhānallāh\textsuperscript{156}) to draw the Imām’s attention towards the error and wait for his return to the last sitting.

If the Imām performs a prostration of the extra Salāh-unit, the Imām-follower should perform the ending Salām alone.

\textsuperscript{154} Due to some excusable difficulty
\textsuperscript{155} Due to forgetfulness or by mistake
\textsuperscript{156} Glory be to Allāh!
If the Imâm-follower performs the ending Salâm before the Imâm performs the a prostration of the extra Salâh-unit, the Imâm-follower’s obligatory Salâh will become invalid.

If the Imâm raises his head from bowing or prostration before the Imâm-follower is able to complete saying (Subhâna râbi’i’l-‘azîm or Subhâna râbi’i’l-a’lî) thrice, the Imâm-follower should follow his Imâm leaving his remembrance incomplete.

It is Detestable for an Imâm-follower to perform the ending Salâm before his Imâm.

If the Imâm-follower performs the ending Salâm before the Imâm completes his Tashahhud, his Salâh will be invalid.

**Rulings of Sutrah**

Prophet ﷺ said:

إذَا صَلَّى أَحَدُكُمْ فَلْيُصَلِّ إِلَى سُتْرَةٍ وَلْيَدْنُ مَهَا (أَبَوٍ دَوْدٍ ۸۱٥، إي كيو ۸۸٢٦۹)

When one of you performs Salâh, he should perform it towards a Sutrah and he should stand close to it.

Sutrah is an object like wood piece, etc. which a Salâh-performer keeps in front of him so that a passer-by passing in front of him does not disturb his concentration in Salâh.

It is Desirable for an Imâm to keep a Sutrah in front of him if the Salâh is being performed in a place where people frequently pass by.

An Imâm-follower does not need a Sutrah specifically for himself because Imâm’s Sutrah will serve as a Sutrah for him too.

It is Desirable for a Salâh-performer to stand close to the Sutrah.

It is Desirable that the Salâh-performer shift slightly towards right or left of the Sutrah instead of directly facing it.

It is necessary that the Sutrah be at least a cubit in length.

It is also necessary that the thickness of the Sutrah be at least that of a finger.

**Rulings of passing by in front of a Salâh-performer**

In a large mosque, passing by in front of a Salâh-performer between his feet and place of prostration on the ground is not permissible.

---

157 Glory be to my mighty Lord! Glory be to my Lord, most high!
158 Sutrah is any object like whip-stick, etc. which is kept in front of a Salâh-performer in an open place to indicate to passers-by passing in front of the Salâh-performer that they should not pass by at a closer distance.
159 1 cubit = nearly 18 inches
In an open ground too, passing by in front of a Salāh-performer between his feet and place of prostration on the ground is not permissible.

In a small mosque or a small house\textsuperscript{161}, passing by in front of a Salāh-performer between his feet and the wall facing him in the Salāh-direction is not permissible.

Similarly, it is not permissible for a Salāh-performer to perform it in a place where people are likely to pass by in front of him, like performing Salāh without a Sutrah in a place where people frequently pass by.

If a person passes by in front of a Salāh-performer, then it is permissible for the Salāh-performer to move him away through gesture or by saying aloud a remembrance formula.

Similarly, it is permissible for the Salāh-performer to move the passer-by away by raising his voice during recitation.

The Salāh-performer should not push away the passer-by with his hand.

A woman should move away the passer-by through gesture or by clapping, i.e. beating aloud her right palm over the back of her left.

She should not raise her voice during recitation to move away the passer-by.

\textbf{When breaking a Salāh is compulsory and when it is permissible}

It is not permissible for a Salāh-performer to break his Salāh after starting it without an excuse valid in the eyes of the Shari'ah.

It is not permissible for a Salāh-performer to break his Salāh when his father or mother calls him.

It is compulsory for a Salāh-performer to break his Salāh when he sees a blind person getting close to a well or a pit and he fears that if he does not warn the blind person, he might fall into it.

It is compulsory for a Salāh-performer to break his Salāh when an oppressed person appeals to him for help provided that he is capable of freeing him from the oppression.

It is permissible for a Salāh-performer to break his Salāh when he sees a thief stealing a property which is equal to a dirham\textsuperscript{162} or more no matter whether the property belongs to him or to someone else.

It is permissible for a traveler to postpone his Salāh if he is fearful of thieves.

\textsuperscript{160} Large mosque: Any mosque which is 40 cubits or more in length (perpendicular to Salāh-rows) is a large mosque. Others are small mosques. (Ar Radd-ul Muftär àla-d Durr-il Mukhtär 1/634)

\textsuperscript{161} A small house is less than 40 cubits. A large house is 40 cubits or more.

\textsuperscript{162} A dirham is around 2.975 gram of silver (₹169 at Hyderabad on 29 Apr 2012).
Witr Salāh

Prophet ﷺ said:

أوثر حق، فمَن لم يُوت ر فلا نا (أبو داود ۱۹۴۹)

Witr Salāh is a duty, so he who does not observe it does not belong to us. (EQ 16108)

Witr Salāh is compulsory.

If a person misses Witr forgetfully or intentionally, it is compulsory for him to late-perform it.

Witr Salāh consists of three Salāh-units ending with a single pair of ending Salāms.

Witr is offered after completing the traditional Salāh of Ishā comprising two Salāh-units.

It is not permissible to perform Witr sitting when capable of standing.

Similarly, it is not permissible to perform Witr while riding an animal except when he has some excusable difficulty.

In every Salāh-unit of Witr, it is compulsory for the Salāh-performer to recite Fātiḥah and another Qurānic chapter as he does in supererogatory Salāhs.

At the end of the first two Salāh-units of Witr, he should sit down for Tashahhud.

He should not continue in this first sitting after completing Tashahhud.

When he stands up for the third Salāh-unit, he should not recite Sanā’163 or “Aʿūzu billāhi minash shaiṭān-ir rajīm”.

When he completes reciting Qurānic chapter in the third Salāh-unit, it is compulsory for him to raise his palms to the level of his ears and say Takbir as he does at the beginning of a Salāh. Then, before bowing he should recite the Qunūt supplication while standing.

Qunūt supplication is compulsory in Witr Salāh throughout the year.

Every one of the Imām, Imām-follower and singleton should recite Qunūt supplication inaudibly.

The tradition is to recite the supplication reported by Abdūl-lāh bin Masūd as Qunūt. It is as mentioned in footnote 108:

اللّهُمَّ إِنَّا نَسْتَعِينُكَ وَنُسْتَغْفِرُكَ، وَنَعْمَنَ بِكَ وَنَتَوَكَّلُ عَلَيْكَ، وَنْثَبُّ عَلَيْكَ الْخَيْرَ، وَنَتَشْكُرُكَ وَلَا نَفْرَكَ، وَنَجْعَلُ وَنَتَرَكُّ مِنْ يَعْجُرُكَ. اللّهُمَّ إِنَّكَ نَعْدُ، وَلَكَ أَسْتَغْفِرُ وَنَسْتَجِنُ، وَلَكَ نَسْتَعِينُ وَنُحْمِدُكَ، وَنُشْشَمُ عَدَايْكَ، إِنَّ عَدَايْكَ بِالْكُفَّارِ مُلْحِقٌ. (البدر المنير في تخريج الأحاديث والأثر الواقعة فيشرح الكبير ۵/۴۷۰ مع تغيير يسير)

163 See footnote Error! Bookmark not defined.
Allâhumma innâ nastânnuwa wa nastağfiruwa, wa nu’minu bika wa natawakkalu âlaika, wa nuthnî âlaîk-al khaira, wa nashkuruka wa lâ nakfuruka, wa nakhlaû wa natruku mañ yafjuruka. Allâhumma iyyâka na’budu, wa laka nuşali wa nasjudu, wa ilâka nasâ wa naîhidu, wa narjû rahmataka wa nakhshâ âzâbaka, inna âzâbaka bil kuffâri mulhiq.\(^\text{164}\)

If a person is unable to recite the traditional Qunût supplication, he should say:

\[
\text{ربّنا أتّبَعَكَ في الدّنّى حسنّةً وّفي الآخرة حسنّةً وّقُنَّا عَذّابَ النّارِ}
\]

Rabbanâ âtinä fi-d dunyâ ġhasanatañ wa fi-l âkhirati ġhasanatañ wa qinâ âzâbân när.\(^\text{165}\)

Or else, he may say: \(\text{أَللهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِيْ}\)\(^\text{166}\) thrice, or \(\text{يا رَبّي}\)\(^\text{167}\) thrice.

If a Salâh-performer forgets reciting Qunût, then remembers it while bowing, he should not recite Qunût during bowing, nor should he return to standing posture for reciting Qunût. Instead, he should perform prostration of forgetfulness after performing the ending salâm for forgetting to perform the compulsory act.

Similarly, if he remembers it after raising his head from the bowing posture, he should not recite Qunût, rather he should perform prostration of forgetfulness after performing the ending salâm.

If he recites Qunût after standing up from the bowing posture, he should not repeat the bowing, rather he should perform prostration of forgetfulness for delaying Qunût from its prescribed time.

If the Imâm bows before the Imâm-follower has completed reciting Qunût, the latter should not follow the imam. He should complete his Qunût, then join the Imâm in bowing.

However, if the Imâm-follower fears missing bowing with Imâm, he should leave Qunût-recitation and follow Imâm in bowing.

If the Imâm misses Qunût-recitation, the Imâm-follower should recite it if it is possible for him to join the Imâm in bowing.

But if he fears missing bowing with imam, he should follow Imâm and leave out the Qunût.

In no Salâh other than witr and in times of calamities should a person recite Qunût.

In times of calamities, it is tradition for Imâm – not for Imâm-follower – to recite Qunût after raising head from bowing in the last Salâh-unit.

\(^\text{164}\) O Allâh! We seek help from You. We seek Your forgiveness. We believe in You. We rely on You. We praise You in the best manner. We thank You and are not ungrateful to You. We separate and break up from all who disobey You. O Allâh! We worship You and to You do we pray and prostrate. To You do we flee and we are quick in doing so. We hope for Your mercy and we fear Your punishment. Verily, Your punishment overtakes the Disbelievers.

\(^\text{165}\) Our Lord, give us good in this world and good in the Hereafter, and save us from the punishment of Fire. (Qurâân 2:201)

\(^\text{166}\) Allâhumma-ghfirli! (O Allâh, forgive me!)

\(^\text{167}\) Ya rabb! (O Lord!)
The Imam should recite the following Qunüt in the Qunüt of calamity. He may add to it supplications reported in the tradition.

َّ اللَّهُمَّ اهْدِنَا بِفَضْلِكَ فِيمَنْ هَدَيْتَ، وَعَافِنَا فِيمَنْ عَافَ، وَتَوَلَّنَا فِيمَنْ تَوَلَّيْتَ، وَبَارِكْ لَنَا فِيمَا أَعْطَيْتَ، وَقَنَا شَرَّ مَا قَضَيْتَ، فَإِنَّكَ تَقْضِيْ وَلَ يُقْضَى عَلَيْكَ، إِنَّهُ لَ يَذِلُّ مَنْ وَالِئَتَ، وَلَ يَلِزُّ مَنْ عَادَيْتَ، تَبَارَكْ رَبَّنَا عَلَى سَيْدَيْنَا مُحَمَّدٍ، وَّ آلِهِ، وَصَلَّى اللُّ عَلَى سَيِّدِنَا مُحَمَّدٍ، وَّ آلِهِ، وَصَحْبِهِ وَسَلَّمَ.

If a late-comer at Salāh, catches up with the Imam in the bowing of the third Salāh-unit, he will be considered de jure to have caught up in Qunūt recitation. So, he will not recite Qunūt when he stands up to complete his missed Salāh after the Imam’s ending salām.

Performing Witr Salāh in congregation in the month of Ramaḍān is preferable to performing it singly in the last part of night.

Performing Witr in congregation outside Ramaḍān is detestable.

**Traditional Salāhs**

These are the Salāhs which the Prophet ﷺ used to perform to get closer to Allāh the Glorious, over and above what Allāh had made obligatory. He used to perform some of the traditional Salāhs regularly while the others he used to miss sometimes.

The Salāhs which the Prophet ﷺ has performed regularly are called *emphasized traditions*.

The Salāhs which he has performed at times and missed at times are called *non-emphasized traditions* or desirable Salāhs.

---

168 Allāhumma-hdinā bifazlika fīman hadaita, wa āfīnā fīman āfīta, wa tawallanā fīman tawallaita, wa bārik lanā fimā ā’taita, wa qinā sharra mā qaṣaita, fainnaka taqzī wa lā yuqzā ālaika, innahū lā yazillu mañ wālaita, wa lā yaiżū man ādaita, tabāraqtay rabbanā wa taalaita, wa sallallahu ala sayyidīna Muhāmmadiñ, wa ālihi wa saḥbihi wa sallam. (based on Musnad Abī Ya’lá: 6759, Nūrul Izāh 1/78).

O Allāh! Guide us by Your mercy among those whom You have guided right. Grant us safety among those whom You have granted safety. Take us for friends among those whom You have taken for friends. Bless me in that which You have bestowed upon me. Guard me from the evil of that which You have ordained for it is You Who ordains and none can ordain against You. Indeed, never is he abased whom You take as a friend and none is respected whom You take as a foe. Blessed are You, our Lord, and exalted! Shower Your blessings and peace on our master Muhammad, his kinsmen and his companions.
Emphasized traditions

1. Two Saläh-units before the obligatory Saläh of Fajr
2. Four Saläh-units with one ending salâm before the obligatory Saläh of Zuhr
3. Two Saläh-units after the obligatory Saläh of Zuhr
4. Two Saläh-units after the obligatory Saläh of Maghrib
5. Two Saläh-units after the obligatory Saläh of Ishä
6. Four Saläh-units with one ending salâm before the compulsory Saläh of Friday
7. Four Saläh-units with one ending salâm after the compulsory Saläh of Friday

Non-emphasized traditional Salâhs

1. Four Saläh-units before the compulsory Saläh of Asr
2. Six Saläh-units after Maghrib
3. Four Saläh-units after the compulsory Salâhs of Ishä
4. Four Saläh-units after Ishä

---

169 According to Imâm Abû Yüsuf, the traditional Salâhs after obligatory Friday Saläh are six Saläh-units.
Rulings of traditional Salāhs

The traditional Salāhs are performed like obligatory Salāhs except that in supererogatory Salāhs\textsuperscript{170}, a Qurānic chapter or part thereof is appended to the chapter of Al Fātihah in every Salāh-unit.

If a person performs a supererogatory Salāh of more than two Salāh-units, and sits for At Tahiyyāt only at the end of the last Salāh-unit, his supererogatory Salāh will be valid but detestable.

It is detestable to perform more than four Salāh-units with a single ending salām in day time.

It is detestable to perform more than eight Salāh-units with a single ending salām at night time.

According to Imām Abū Hanīfah, the preferable method is to perform four Salāh-units with one ending salām both in day and at night.\textsuperscript{171}

Standing and reciting the Qurān for long durations is preferable to performing more number of Salāh-units.

Performing desirable Salāhs at night is preferable over desirable Salāhs in day.

Desirable Salāhs and night-waking\textsuperscript{172}

It is desirable for a person entering a mosque to perform two units of Salāh before sitting in it. This is called Tahiyyat-ul Masjid (salutation of the mosque).

If he performs the two units after sitting in the mosque, then also there is no problem.

If he performs obligatory Salāh or some other Salāh after entering the mosque without intending Tahiyyat-ul Majsid Salāh with it, then too this Salāh will be sufficient for him, in place of Tahiyyat-ul Masjid.

Two units of Salāh are desirable after ablution and before drying up of water from the body-organs. This Salāh is called Tahiyyat-ul Wuzū (salutation of ablution).

Four Salāh units are desirable in the forenoon\textsuperscript{173}. He may increase the number of Salāh-units as he wishes up to twelve Salāh-units. This Salāh is called Salāt-uz Zuhā or the forenoon Salāh.

Two Salāh-units of Istikhārah are desirable. Istikhārah means consultation with Allāh.

Salāh of need consisting of two Salāh-units is desirable.

\textsuperscript{170} Supererogatory Salāh is superset of traditional Salāh. Traditional Salāhs and desirable Salāhs are its two categories.

\textsuperscript{171} The preferable method in the opinion of Imāms Abū Yūsuf and Muhammad is to perform Salāhs of two units each at night and Salāhs of four units each in day.

\textsuperscript{172} Night-waking means engaging in acts of obedience to and worship of Allāh most of the night, like Salāh, Qurān recitation, remembrance of Allāh.

\textsuperscript{173} Starting at around 20 minutes after sunrise and ending a little before noon.
It is desirable to wake at night in the last ten days of the month of Ramazān.

Waking in the nights preceding Îdul Fitr and Îdul Azhā is desirable.

Waking in the first ten nights of Zu-l Hijjah is desirable.

It is desirable to remain awake on the night preceding the fifteenth of Sha'bān.

Gathering for night-waking on any of the above nights is detestable when such a gathering takes place due to invitation. If the gathering takes place without invitation, then there is no problem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Salāh</th>
<th>Preceding emphasized tradition</th>
<th>Preceding non-emphasized tradition</th>
<th>Obligatory</th>
<th>Succeeding emphasized tradition</th>
<th>Compulsory</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Fajr</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Zuhr</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Obligatory is 2 during journey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Asr</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Obligatory is 2 during journey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Maghrib</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ishā</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3 (Witr)</td>
<td>Obligatory is 2 during journey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Friday Salāh</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Sermon precedes obligatory Salāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The Two Îds</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2 (in each)</td>
<td>Sermon follows compulsory Salāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Tarāwīh</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Precedes Witr, in Ramażān</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

174 It does not matter whether the gathering takes place in a mosque or some other place.
Salāh in unusual conditions

Salāh while sitting
Obligatory Salāh in sitting posture is invalid when the person is capable of standing.

Similarly, Compulsory Salāh in sitting posture is invalid when the person is capable of standing.

Supererogatory Salāh in sitting posture despite the person being capable of standing is valid.

If a person performs a supererogatory Salāh in sitting posture without excusable difficulty, he gets half the reward of a person performing it in standing position.

If a person performs it in sitting posture due to an excusable difficulty, his reward is similar to that of a person performing it while standing.

A person performing Salāh in sitting posture should sit in the same way as he sits in At Tahiyyāt.

If a person starts a supererogatory Salāh in standing position, it is permissible for him to complete it in sitting posture and this act will not be detestable.

Salāh on an animal
Obligatory Salāh performed on the back of an animal is invalid.

Similarly, compulsory Salāh performed on the back of an animal is invalid.

Thus, Witr Salāh, Salāh of vow, and delayed performing of a supererogatory Salāh which the person had broken after starting it are not permissible on the back of an animal.

Salāh on the back of an animal no matter whether it is obligatory of compulsory is valid if the person is faced with an excusable difficulty, like he fears an enemy if he gets down from the animal, he fears a carnivore, or he fears the animal becoming stubborn, or there is mud at the place.

Similarly, if he is incapable of mounting the animal on his own and there is nobody to help him mount it, then performing Salāh sitting on the animal is valid.

Emphasized traditions are valid on an animal. However for the traditional Salāh of Fajr, he should get down because it is more emphasized than others.

If the person performs Salāh on animal outside a city, he should perform it through gesture facing the direction his animal is turned to.

Salāh on ship
According to Imāms Abū Yūsuf and Muhammad – Allāh’s mercy be upon them —, obligatory Salāh in sitting posture on a sailing ship without excusable difficulty is invalid.

Salāh by gesture on a ship is not valid for a person capable of performing bowing and prostration.

If the ship is anchored to the coast, Salāh in sitting posture on it is not valid when the person is capable of standing.

If the person is not capable of getting out of the ship, then performing Salāh on ship is valid no matter whether the ship is anchored or sailing.

Salāh in train and airplane

Obligatory and compulsory Salāhs on a running trains or a flying airplane in sitting posture without an excusable difficulty is invalid according to most of the Imāms of jurisprudence. However, if he is faced with an excusable difficulty like dizziness, then it is valid.

Similarly, if the train is shaking a lot such that standing becomes difficult, then Salāh in sitting posture is valid.

If the person performs Salāh in standing position between two seats and performs prostration on one of them, his Salāh will be valid if it is not possible for him to perform prostration on the floor of the train.

If the train is standing, then according to all jurists, Salāh in sitting posture on it without an excusable difficulty is invalid.

Similarly, if the airplane is standing on ground, Salāh in sitting posture on it without excusable difficulty is invalid.

If the person starts his Salāh facing the Salāh-direction, then the train or airplane changes direction, the person should turn towards the new Salāh-direction if he is capable of it.

If he is not capable or he is unaware of change in direction of the train or airplane, then his Salāh is valid.

**Tarāwīh Salāh**

The Prophet ﷺ said:

من قام رمضان إيمانًا واحتسابًا، غُفر له ما قَتَّمَ مِن ذَنْبِهِ. (البخاري: ٣) ً

Whoever establishes prayers during the nights of Ramadan faithfully out of sincere faith and hoping to attain Allāh’s rewards (not for showing off), all his past sins will be forgiven. (EQ: 36)

Tarāwīh Salāh is an emphasized tradition for every individual man and woman.
Tarāwīh Salāh in congregation is sufficiency tradition for the people of a locality.\textsuperscript{175}

Tarāwīh Salāh consists of 20 Salāh-units performed with 10 ending Salāms. The time of Tarāwīh starts after Ishā Salāh and extends up to the beginning of dawn.

It is desirable to perform Tarāwīh before Witr Salāh.

Performing Witr before Tarāwīh is valid, but advancing Tarāwīh is preferable.

If is desirable to delay Tarāwīh Salāh up to one-third of the night or to half of the night.\textsuperscript{176}

Delaying Tarāwīh to later than midnight is not detestable.

It is desirable to sit after every four Salāh-units for relaxation to the amount of time in which four Salāh-units may be performed.

Similarly, it is desirable to sit for relaxation between the 20\textsuperscript{th} Salāh-unit and Witr.

It is tradition to recite or listen to the recitation of the holy Qurān in its entirety in Tarāwīh once in the month of Ramāzān.

So, the Imām should not leave out recitation of the complete Qurān due to laziness of the people.

Also, he should not leave out supplication of blessings for the Prophet \( 	ext{ﷺ} \) in the sitting after every two Salāh-units even if the people get tired.

In the same way, he should not leave out Sanā and the remembrance formulas of bowing and prostration even if the people feel tired.

He may leave out the supplication after blessings on the Prophet \( 	ext{ﷺ} \) if the people feel tired due to it.

But the preferable way is to recite a short supplication so that following of the tradition is achieved.

Tarāwīh Salāh should not be late-performed, neither individually nor in congregation.

**Traveler's Salāh**

Allāh said:

\begin{equation}
\text{واذا اتضاوض في الارض فلأليس عليكم جناح أن تقضروا من الصلاة} (القرآن 4:101)
\end{equation}

When you travel on the earth, there is no sin on you in shortening your Salah.\textsuperscript{177}

\textsuperscript{175} Sufficiency tradition means that if a few persons perform it, all the other people of the locality will be saved from the sin of missing this tradition. If all miss it, then each eligible person in the locality will share the sin. (Al Mabsūt by Muhammad bin Ahmad As Sarakhshi 30/262).

\textsuperscript{176} In Shari‘ah, night is considered to begin from sunset and end at dawn.

\textsuperscript{177} Qurān 4:101
Anas رضي الله عنه reported:

خَرَجْنَا مَعَ النَّبِيِّ صَلَّى اللُّ وَسَلَّمَ مِنَ المَدِينَةِ إِلَى مَكَّةَ فَكَانَ يُصَلِّي رَكْلَتَيْنِ حَتَّى رَجَعْنَا إِلَىالمدينة.

We travelled with the Prophet from Medina to Mecca and offered two Rakat (for every prayer) till we returned to Medina.178

The least amount of travel in which shortening of Salâh become compulsory and breaking fast in Ramâzan becomes permissible is the one covering a distance of three days out of the shortest days of the year by foot or on camel with average speed179.

If a person covers a distance of three days in, say, one hour on a fast vehicle like train or airplane, then also shortening of Salâh is compulsory for him.

Shortening of Salâh is compulsory for a traveler.

If a person performs the complete Salâh while in journey, he has committed a bad act.

The traveler should shorten the obligatory Salâh in Zuhr, Asr and Ishâ.

So on these occasions, he should perform two Salâh-units as obligatory Salâh, instead of four.

He should not shorten the Salâh in Fajr and Maghrib.

Prerequisites for validity of the intention to travel180

For validity of the intention to travel, three things are prerequisites:

1. The person who has made the intention should be an adult.
   If he is a child, then shortening of Salâh will not be compulsory for him.

2. The person who has made the intention should be independent in his journey.
   Shortening of Salâh will not be compulsory if he is subordinate in the travel to a person who has not made the intention to travel.
   The intention of wife to travel will not be valid when his husband has not made that intention as she is subordinate to her husband.
   Similarly, the intention of a servant is not valid when his master has not intended to travel as the servant is subordinate to his master.
   The intention of a soldier to travel is also not valid when his commander has not made that intention as he is subordinate to his commander.

3. The (one-way) distance of the journey should not be less than three days by foot181.

---

178 Bukhâri 1081, Muslim 693, EQ 1028
179 It amounts to about 89 km or, to be exact, 88.704 km. (Al Fiqh-ul Islami wa Adillatuh 2/477)
180 Travel or journey in Shari‘ah: is the journey in which a person goes out of his city or village of residence with the intention of reaching a place at a distance of 88.704 km or more. If a person wanders around without the intention of reaching a specific place and traverses the entire world in the process, then he remains a resident and he should perform complete Salâhs. (Al Mausüat-ul Fiqhiyyat-ul Kuwaitiyah 27/266)
181 Equivalent to about 89 km.
**When should shortening of Salāh be started?**

Shortening of Salāh is permissible only when the traveler has come out of the village and crossed past its buildings.

Shortening of Salāh is permissible only when the traveler has come out of the city and crossed past its buildings and yards.\(^{182}\)

Shortening of Salāh does not become permissible by merely making the intention of travel as long as he has not left behind the village or the city.

If the person has come out of his house but not yet crossed past the yards of the city or the buildings of the village, then also shortening of Salāh is not permissible.

Shortening of Salāh is compulsory in all journeys no matter whether the journey was undertaken for an act of virtue like Haj or Jihād,\(^{183}\) or for a permissible act like trading, or for a sinful act like thievery.

If a traveler completes a four-unit Salāh having sat for At Tahiyyāt after the first two units, his Salāh will be valid. The last two Salāh-units will become supererogatory. However, such a Salāh is detestable as the ending Salām has been relocated from its rightful position.\(^{184}\)

If a traveler completes a four-unit Salāh without sitting at the end of the first two units for a period in which At Tahiyyāt may be recited, then his Salāh will be invalid. The reason is that shortening is a necessitation according to Hanafis, not mere concession.

**Period of shortening of Salāh**

The traveler will keep performing shortened Salāhs till he returns to and enters his city or village.

However, if during journey he intends to reside at a city or village for fifteen days or more, he will not shorten his Salāhs.

If he intends to reside for less than fifteen days, he will keep performing shortened Salāhs.

Similarly if he does not make intention of residing but remains at a place for years,\(^{185}\) he will keep performing shortened Salāhs.

---

\(^{182}\) Yard means the places set apart for the needs of the city like burying the dead, grazing cattle, playing games, etc.

\(^{183}\) Jihād is fighting with the purpose of exalting Allāh’s din.

\(^{184}\) At the end of the first two units.

\(^{185}\) Without the intention of residing for fifteen days or more.
A traveler following a resident Imām in Salāh and the reverse

It is permissible for a traveler to perform Salāh following a resident Imām. The traveler should then complete the four-unit Salāhs, following his Imām.

A resident may also follow a traveler Imām.

When a traveler is the Imām for residents, he should, after completing his two units in a four-unit Salāh and performing the ending Salām say out loud: "I am a traveler so you people complete your Salāh."

But the preferable way is to say out this before starting the Salāh as well as after completing his two units.

When a resident follower stands up to complete his Salāh after his traveler Imām has performed the ending Salām, he should not recite in the units. He should instead complete his remaining units without Qurān recitation like the follower whose ablution breaks during Salāh, so he goes back for ablution and returns to complete the missed out units.

If a person misses a four-unit Salāh during journey, he will late-perform it as two units, whether he does this during the journey or when resident.

If a person misses a four-unit Salāh while resident, he will late-perform it as four units no matter whether he does this during journey or while resident.

Kinds of residences and their rulings

Residences are of two kinds: (1) Principal and (2) Temporary

(1) Principal Residence

It is the city or village which the person has made his permanent residence irrespective of whether he is married in that place or not.¹⁸⁶

Principal residence can be invalidated by another principal residence.¹⁸⁷

---

¹⁸⁶ Principal residence is the city or village where a person stays with his wives and children — irrespective of whether it is his place of birth or not — and he intends to live there permanently, not to migrate from there. (Al Mausūât-ul Fiqhiyyat-ul Kuwaitiyyah 27/266)

The city or village of permanent residence of a man’s wives is also treated as his principal residence. (Al Mausūât-ul Fiqhiyyat-ul Kuwaitiyyah 27/267)

Thus, if a man has wives in two cities, then on entering either of the two, he will at once become a resident and so he will not shorten his Salāh. (Al Mausūât-ul Fiqhiyyat-ul Kuwaitiyyah 44/57)

Principal residence can be one or more. If a person has wives and homes in two cities or villages and his wives do not intend to migrate from there, then he will have two principal residences. (Al Mausūât-ul Fiqhiyyat-ul Kuwaitiyyah 27/267)
If a person migrates from his principal residence to a new city or village and makes it his permanent residence, then returns to his previous principal residence for any reason, he will perform shortened Salāhs as it is no more his principal residence.

(2) Temporary Residence
It is a city or village where the person intends to stay for 15 days or more.

A temporary residence is invalidated by another temporary residence.

Temporary residence is invalidated by traveling out of it.

Temporary residence is also invalidated by returning to the principal residence.

Sick person's Salāh

Allāh said:

لا يكِفْنَى الله تَفْسَلَ الْأَوْصَاعُهَا (القرآن ٢:٤٨١)

Allāh does not oblige anyone beyond his capacity.

Allāh’s Prophet, ﷺ said:

صلْ قائمًا، فإنَّ لم تَسْتَطِعْ فَقَاعِدًا، فإنَّ لم تَسْتَطِعْ فَلَى جَنْبٍ.

Pray while standing and if you cannot, pray while sitting and if you cannot do even that, then pray lying on your side.” ١٨٨

Leaving out Salāh is not permissible even when sick.

If a person is so sick that he is unable to perform the essential parts of Salāh in entirety, then he should complete all the essentials that he is able to.

A sick person who is unable to stand in Salāh should perform Salāh while sitting and do the bowing and prostrations.

Similarly a sick person for whom standing is very difficult on account of severe pain should perform Salāh while sitting and do the bowing and prostrations.

Likewise, if a person fears acquiring a new disease, aggravation of an already existing disease or delay in cure from a disease on account of standing in Salāh, he should perform Salāh while sitting.

١٨٧ Principal residence is invalidated only when the person migrates forever to a new principal residence. A temporary residence does not invalidate his principal residence. If a person migrates to a new city or village making it his principal residence, taking with him his wife(s) and children and leaving forever his old principal residence, then the first place no more remains his principal residence. If he comes back here as a traveler he will perform two Salāh-units instead of four. (Al Mausūṭ-ul Fiqhiyyat-ul Kuwaitiyah 27/267)

١٨٨ Bukhārī 1117, EQ 1059
If a person is unable to perform both of or either of bowing and prostrations, he should perform Salāh while sitting and perform bowing and/or prostrations by gesture.

If a person is bowing and prostrating by gesture, he should make his gesture for prostrations lower than his gesture for bowing.

If he does not make his gesture for prostrations lower than his gesture for bowing, his Salāh will be invalid.

It is not permissible to raise an object to perform prostration upon it.

If a sick person is unable to sit, then he should perform Salāh while lying with his back down and keeping his legs towards the Salāh-direction. He should keep his knees upright and his head raised upon a pillow so that his face is in the direction of the Salāh-direction. He should perform bowing and prostrations by gesture.

Similarly, if the person is unable to sit, it is permissible for him to lie on his side for Salāh and perform bowing and prostration by gesture.

Gesture will take the place of bowing and prostrations only when it is made with the head.

If the gesture is done with eyes, eyebrows or in the heart, the Salāh will not be valid.

If a person is unable to perform Salāh by gesture with head, he will late-perform the Salāhs of up to one day and night. Further to it, the Salāhs will not be obligatory for him.

If a person suffers from insanity or swoon and the insanity or swoon continues for more than five Salāhs, those Salāhs will not be obligatory for him.

If a person suffers from insanity or swoon and the insanity or swoon continues for up to five Salāhs or less, he should late-perform the Salāhs after regaining his health.

If a person starts his Salāh in standing position, then he feels himself incapable of standing, he should perform Salāh sitting if he can. If he is unable to sit also, then he should perform Salāh by gesture lying on bed.

**Missing and lagging behind in Salah**

**Late-performing missed Salāh**

Allāh said:

إن الصلاة كأنما كنتم مقيمين كأنما موقوداً (القرآن 4:103)

Surely, Salah is an obligation on the believers that is tied up with time.
It is compulsory to perform the Salāhs in their specific times.

Delaying a Salāh over its end-time-limit without an excusable difficulty is not permissible.

If a person delays his Salāh over its end-time-limit on account of an excusable difficulty, late-performing it after the end of the difficulty is essential.

Late-performing a missed obligatory Salāh is obligatory.

Late-performing a missed compulsory Salāh is compulsory.

Missed traditional and desirable Salāhs need not be late-performed. However, if any of them was broken after it had been started, then late-performing it would be compulsory.

If a person misses the traditional as well as the obligatory units of Fajr, then he should late-perform the traditional units along with the obligatory units till a little before midday.

If he misses only the traditional Salāh of Fajr, then he should not late-perform it.

Keeping the missed Salāh and the current Salāh in order is compulsory.

Performing the current Salāh before performing the missed Salāh is not permissible.

Similarly, performing the various missed Salāhs in order is also compulsory.

Thus, late-performing a missed Zuhr Salāh before the missed Fajr of the same day is not permissible.

Performing obligatory Salāhs and Witr in order is also compulsory.

Performing Fajr before late-performing the previous night’s missed Witr is not permissible.

Performing the various missed Salāhs in order and keeping the missed Salāh and the current Salāh in order is compulsory only when the number of missed Salāhs other than Witr has not reached six.

If the number of missed Salāhs is less than six and the person intends to late-perform them, then it will be compulsory for him to perform them in order. He should, for instance, late-perform Fajr before Zuhr and Zuhr before Asr.

In the following three cases, performing Salāhs in order does not remain compulsory:

1. The number of missed Salāhs other than Witr is six or more.
2. The person fears missing the current Salāh due to limited time remaining.
3. The person forgets that he has to late-perform a missed Salāh, and hence performs the current Salāh forgetfully.

If the sixth missed Salāh is Witr, it will be compulsory for the person to late-perform Witr before performing Fajr.
If, on account of the number of missed Salāhs reaching six or more, performing them in order did not remain compulsory, then it will continue to be so even when the number of missed Salāhs later becomes less than six. For example, a person missed ten Salāhs, nine of which he late-performed and one still remains. Then he performs the current Salāh before late-performing the missed one, remembering that he has a missed Salāh upon him. This will be permissible and his Salāh will be valid as the compulsoriness of performing in order has lost effectiveness for him.

If a person performs the current Salāh while remembering that he has to late-perform a missed one, his current obligatory Salāh will become invalid, but this invalidity will be suspended.

If he performs five Salāhs before late-performing the missed Salāh remembering all the while that he has a missed Salāh upon him, then the invalidity will lose effectiveness when the time for the fifth performed-on-time Salāh passes. All his five obligatory Salāhs will be valid.

But if he late-performs the missed Salāh before the time for the fifth performed-on-time Salāh passes, then all the five obligatory will become invalid. These obligatory get converted to supererogatories. It will now be necessary for him to late-perform these five Salāhs as well which he had performed before late-performing the single missed Salāh.

If there are many missed Salāhs, the person needs to specify each of them when late-performing.

But if specifying each Salāh becomes difficult for him, then he will, of instance, make intention that he is performing his first missed Zuhr, or his last missed Zuhr.

**Catching up with a congregational obligatory Salāh**

A person starts an obligatory Salāh singly. But before he performs a prostration, the congregational obligatory Salāh begins there. Then he should break his Salāh by performing one ending Salām while standing and join the congregation.

If a person has started obligatory Salāh of Fajr or Maghrib and performed a prostration too, then the congregational obligatory Salāh begins, he should break his Salāh and join the congregation.

If he started a four-unit obligatory Salāh and completed one Salāh-unit, then the congregational obligatory Salāh begins, he should singly perform the second unit too. Then he should perform the ending Salām and join the congregation with the intention of performing the obligatory Salāh. The two units which he had performed singly will become supererogatory.

If the congregational Salāh begins after a person has singly performed three units of a four-unit Salāh, he should complete the fourth unit too singly. Then he should join the congregation behind the Imām with the intention of performing a supererogatory, if it is Zuhr or Ishā. If it is Asr, he should not join the congregation.

If the congregational Salāh begins after a person has singly performed two units of a four-unit Salāh and stood up for the third unit but not yet performed a prostration of the third unit, then he should break
his Salāh with an ending Salām while standing, then join the congregation with the intention of performing the obligatory Salāh.

If on the occasion of a Friday Salāh, a person has started the pre-obligatory four-unit traditional Salāh, then the Imām comes out for sermon, the person should complete two units and perform the ending Salām. After completing the obligatory Friday Salāh, he should late-perform this four-unit tradition.

If the congregation for obligatory Zuhr Salāh begins after a person has started the pre-obligatory four-unit traditional Salāh, he should complete two units and perform the ending Salām. He should then join the congregation and late-perform this four-unit tradition after completing the obligatory.

If a person enters mosque after the congregational obligatory Salāh has started, he should join the congregation instead of engaging in a traditional Salāh, except in Fajr.

If a person enters mosque after the congregational obligatory Fajr Salāh has started, he should perform the pre-obligatory two-unit tradition outside the mosque or in a distant corner, if it appears overwhelmingly probable to him that he will be able to catch up with the Imām in the second Salāh-unit.

If he fears missing the time of Fajr for the obligatory two units or the congregation, he should perform the obligatory and leave out the two-unit tradition.

If a person catches up with the Imām during bowing, he has de jure caught up with that entire unit.

If the Imām raises his head before the person bows, then he has de jure missed that entire unit.

It is detestable to go out of a mosque after Salāh-call has been made up to the completion of the congregational Salāh.

Going out of mosque after Salāh-call has been made is not detestable for a person who is Imām or Salāh-announcer at another mosque.

If congregational Salāh for Zuhr or Ishā begins when a person in the mosque has already performed it, it will be detestable for him to go out of the mosque. He should instead join the congregation with the intention of performing a supererogatory Salāh.

If congregational Salāh for Fajr, Asr or Maghrib begins when a person has already performed it singly, then going out of the mosque is not detestable for him.

**Penalty for Salāh and fast**

If a sick person becomes capable of late-performing missed Salāhs, though by gesture, but he dies before late-performing them, it will be compulsory for him to make a will to his testamentary guardian to pay the penalty of missed Salāhs.
Similarly, if a sick person becomes capable of late-performing missed fasts, but dies before late-performing them, it will be compulsory for him to make a will to his testamentary guardian to pay the penalty of missed Salâhs.

If the sick person dies before late-performing the missed Witr Salâhs at the time of which he was capable, then also it will be compulsory for him to make a will to his testamentary guardian to pay its penalty.

The guardian will pay the penalty out of a third of the inheritance.

The penalty for Salâh of each of the five times is: 1.632 kg of wheat or its market-price, or 3.264 kg of barley or its market-price.\(^{189}\)

The penalty for each fast is: 1.632 kg of wheat or its market-price, or 3.264 kg of barley or its market-price.

It is permissible for the testamentary guardian to pay the penalty for all Salâhs to a single poor person.

However, in case of the penalty for expiation of a vow, it is not permissible to pay one poor person in one day more than 1.632 kg of wheat or its equivalent.

If the deceased did not make a will for payment of penalty, yet the testamentary guardian by himself paid on his behalf, then it is hoped that it will be accepted by Allâh.

It is not valid for the testamentary guardian to fast on behalf of the deceased in lieu of the latter's missed fasts.

It is not valid for the testamentary guardian to perform Salâh on behalf of the deceased in lieu of the latter's missed Salâhs.

If the sick person dies before he becomes capable of performing Salâh by gesture, making a will for payment of penalty will not be necessary for him, no matter whether the missed Salâhs were many or few.

Similarly, if a sick person dies before he becomes capable of observing the fasts he missed during the period of his death-sickness, it will not be necessary for him to make the will, no matter whether the missed fasts were many or few.

Likewise, if a traveler dies before becoming resident, it will not be necessary for him to make a will for payment of the penalty of fasts.

\(^{189}\) = 1/2 sä' of wheat or its market-price, or one sä' of barley or its market-price.
Rulings of prostrations of forgetfulness

If a person leaves out an essential act of Salāh, it will be invalid and it will be compulsory for him to repeat the Salāh.

The deficiency in Salāh will not be remedied by prostrations of forgetfulness nor by any other thing, no matter whether he left out the essential act intentionally or forgetfully.

If a person leaves out a compulsory act of Salāh intentionally, then he is a sinner. His Salāh is invalid and it is compulsory for him to repeat the Salāh. The deficiency in Salāh cannot be remedied by prostrations of forgetfulness.

If a person leaves out a compulsory act of Salāh forgetfully, it is compulsory for him to perform prostrations of forgetfulness. The deficiency in his Salāh will be remedied by these prostrations.

Thus, prostrations of forgetfulness are compulsory in the following cases:

1. The person leaves out recitation of the Qurānic chapter of Fātiḥah forgetfully in both or either of the first two units of an obligatory Salāh. Same will be the ruling if he leaves out recitation of the chapter of Fātiḥah forgetfully in any of the units of a supererogatory or Witr Salāh.
2. The person forgets additional Qurānic recitation in the first two units of an obligatory Salāh, then does this recitation in the last two units.
3. He forgets throughout the Salāh the additional Qurānic recitation in both or either of the first two units of an obligatory Salāh. Same will be the ruling if he forgets the additional recitation in any unit of a supererogatory or Witr Salāh.
4. He recites Fātiḥah twice. In this case, he has delayed the additional Qurānic recitation from its rightful position.
5. He performs only one prostration and stands up for the next unit. Then in that or later unit, he performs the two prostrations of that unit as well as the prostration he missed earlier. In this case, his Salāh will be valid and prostrations of forgetfulness will be compulsory for him.
6. He leaves out forgetfully the first At Tahiyyāt sitting in a three- or four-unit Salāh, no matter whether he left it out in an obligatory Salāh or a supererogatory Salāh. If a person leaves out the first At Tahiyyāt sitting in an obligatory Salāh forgetfully and stands up completely for the third unit, he should continue the third unit instead of returning for the sitting. Later, he should perform the prostrations of forgetfulness as he has left out the compulsory act of the first At Tahiyyāt sitting.
7. He leaves out the recitation of At Tahiyyāt forgetfully.
8. He forgets to say the Qunūt Takbīr in a Witr Salāh.
9. He forgets reciting the Qunūt supplication before bowing in a Witr Salāh.
10. The Imām recites audibly in a Salāh of inaudible recitation.
11. The Imām recites inaudibly in a Salāh of audible recitation.

---

Recitation in addition to Fātiḥah.
12. He does more than At Tahiyyāt recitation in the first At Tahiyyāt sitting, like forgetfully reciting the blessings supplication for the Prophet ﷺ after completing the At Tahiyyāt, or staying silent for a period in which one of the smallest essentials of Salāh may be performed.

**Other rulings related to the prostrations of forgetfulness**

Prostrations of forgetfulness are compulsory for both Imām and Imām-followers due to the Imām's forgetfulness.

Prostrations of forgetfulness are not compulsory if an Imām-follower forgets something while following the Imām.

Prostrations of forgetfulness will be compulsory if the Imām-follower forgets while completing his missed units after the Imām has performed the ending Salāms.

If an Imām performs prostrations of forgetfulness after it became compulsory for him, then it will be compulsory for the Imām-followers to follow him in the prostrations of forgetfulness.

If prostrations of forgetfulness become compulsory for a person, yet he leaves them out intentionally, then he will be a sinner. Repeating the Salāh will be compulsory for him.

If a person leaves out more than one compulsory act forgetfully, then also two prostrations of forgetfulness will be enough for him.

If a person leaves out the first At Tahiyyāt sitting in an obligatory Salāh forgetfully and begins standing up, then he should return to the sitting provided he has not completely stood up straight. At the time of returning, if he was closer to standing, he should perform the prostrations of forgetfulness and if he was closer to sitting, he should not perform them.

If a person forgets the first At Tahiyyāt sitting in a supererogatory Salāh, he should return to the sitting as soon as he remembers, even if he has completely stood up straight. Later, he should perform the prostrations of forgetfulness.

If a person forgets the last At Tahiyyāt sitting and stands up, he should return to the sitting unless he has performed a prostration of the fifth unit. Later he should perform the prostrations of forgetfulness.

If a person forgets the last At Tahiyyāt, stands up and performs a prostration of the next unit, his obligatory Salāh will become supererogatory. He should perform the sixth unit in Zuhr, Asr and Ishā, and the third unit in Fajr. Afterwards, he should repeat the obligatory Salāh.

If a person sits and recites At Tahiyyāt in the last At Tahiyyāt sitting, then stands up thinking that it was the first At Tahiyyāt sitting, he should return to the sitting and perform the ending Salām without repeating the At Tahiyyāt.
If a person performs the ending Salām with the intention of exiting the Salāh when prostrations of forgetfulness were compulsory for him, he should immediately on remembering perform the prostrations of forgetfulness unless he has done an act that is contrary to the state of Salāh, like turning away from the Salāh direction or talking.

If a person performing a four-unit Salāh mistakenly thinks that he has completed his Salāh, so he performs the ending Salām, then he comes to know that he has performed two units only, then should continue with the Salāh. He should perform the left out units and prostrate for forgetfulness.

**Method of prostrations of forgetfulness**

A person for whom prostrations of forgetfulness are compulsory should complete At Tahiyyāt in the last At Tahiyyāt sitting and perform one ending Salām to his right. He should then say the Takbīr and perform two prostrations like the normal prostrations of Salāh. Then he should sit and recite At Tahiyyāt which is compulsory. After this he should recite the blessings supplication for the Prophet محمد ﷺ and the last supplication meant for himself. Next, he should perform the two ending Salāms for exiting the Salāh.

If he prostrates for forgetfulness before perform the Salām, his Salāh will be valid but this act is undesirable.

**When are the prostrations of forgetfulness not required?**

1. Prostrations of forgetfulness are not required in Friday Salāh if the congregations is very large. This is to avoid confusion for the Imām-followers.
2. Prostrations of forgetfulness are not required in Īd Salāhs if the congregation is very large.
3. They are not required in Fajr if after performing the ending Salām, the sun rises.
4. They are not required in Asr if after performing the ending Salām, the sun turns red.
5. They are not required if after the ending Salām, an act contrary to Salāh is done forgetfully like talking.

In all the above cases, repeating the Salāh is not compulsory.

**When does the Salāh become invalid due to doubt and when does it not?**

If during a Salāh, the person falls in doubt about the number of Salāh-units performed and this doubt has occurred to him for the first time, then his Salāh becomes invalid. Repeating the Salāh will be compulsory for him.

If a person doubts about the number of Salāh-units after the ending Salām, his Salāh will not be invalid.
If a person after performing the ending Salāms feels certain that he has left out one or more Salāh-units, he should perform the left out units unless he has done an act contrary to Salāh. If he has done an act contrary to Salāh like talking, he should repeat the complete Salāh.

If a person falls in doubt most of the time and the doubt has become a kind of habit for him, he should act upon what appears overwhelmingly probable to him. If neither side of the doubt appears overwhelmingly probable, then he should act according to the lower of the Salāh-units regarding which he is in doubt. But he should sit after each Salāh-unit considering it to be his last unit. In the end he should perform the prostrations of forgetfulness.

**Rulings of prostration of recitation**

A prostration of recitation is compulsory when any of the following three things happens:

1. A person recites a verse of prostration no matter whether he heard it or not. Similarly prostrations of recitation become compulsory when a person recites the Arabic word of “sajdah” (prostration) from a Qurānic verse of prostration along with a word before it or after it.
2. He hears a verse of prostration no matter whether he intended it or not.
3. He follows an Imām who has recited a verse of prostration no matter whether the Imām-follower heard the recitation of the verse or not.\(^{191}\)

Prostration of recitation is not compulsory for women undergoing menstruation or postnatal discharge.

If an Imām-follower recites a verse of prostration, then also prostrations are not compulsory, neither for the Imām nor for the Imām-follower.

Prostration of recitation is not compulsory for a sleeping person, an insane person, a child or a Disbeliever.

Prostration of recitation is not compulsory when the verse is heard from a non-human being like a parrot.

Prostration of recitation is not compulsory when one hears the verse from a device like tape recorder or cell phone.

At times, it is compulsory to perform prostration of recitation immediately while at others it can be delayed.

It is permissible to delay performing prostration of recitation if it has become compulsory outside Salāh. So, outside Salāh, if the person delays the prostrations, he will not be a sinner. However, delaying it is undesirable.

---

\(^{191}\) In case there is no loud speaker and the congregation is so large that the Imām’s voice does not reach the last rows, then it may happen that the Imām recites a verse of recitation which the Imām-followers in the last rows do not hear.
Performing the prostration of recitation immediately is compulsory if it has become compulsory inside Salāh. This happens if a person recites a verse of prostration during Salāh. In this case, performing it immediately is compulsory.

Performing the prostration immediately means that the gap between the recitation of the verse of prostration and the actual prostration should not be longer than the time required for reciting three small verses of the holy Qurān. This period is called the period of immediacy.

If a period of time longer than that required for reciting three verses passes between the recitation and the prostration, then it will not be called immediate.

If a person did not perform the prostration in Salāh, instead he bowed before the period of immediacy ended and he intended the prostration of recitation with this bowing, then it will be sufficient for him.

Similarly, if he does not perform the prostration of recitation but performs the usual prostrations of Salāh before the period of immediacy ends, then also it will be sufficient, no matter whether he intended performing the prostration of recitation or not.

If the period of immediacy has ended, then neither the bowing nor the prostrations of Salāh will suffice for the missed prostration of recitation. As long as he is in the Salāh, it will be compulsory for him to late-perform it with a special prostration.

If he has exited the Salāh, he should not late-perform it outside the Salāh as the time for it has expired. However, if he exits the Salāh through the ending Salām, then he should late-perform it provided he has not performed a Salāh-invalidating act.

**Other rulings related to prostration of recitation**

If the Imām and the Imām-followers hear a verse of prostration from a person who was not accompanying them in the Salāh, then the Imām and the Imām-followers should perform the prostration of recitation after completing the Salāh.

If they perform this prostration of recitation in the Salāh, the prostration will be invalid but their Salāh will not be broken.

If a person, not in Salāh, hears a verse of prostration from an Imām, and he subsequently follows the Imām in the Salāh before the Imām has prostrated for that verse, then he should follow the Imām in the prostration.

If a person hears a verse of prostration from an Imām, then joins him in the Salāh in that very Salāh-unit but after the Imām has performed the prostration for that verse, then he will be considered de jure to have caught up with the prostration. So he should not perform the prostration of recitation – neither in the Salāh nor outside the Salāh.
If a person recites a verse of prostration outside Salāh and does not perform the prostration, then stands up for Salāh without changing his place and recites the same verse in the Salāh and prostrates for it, then this prostration inside Salāh will be sufficient for him in place of the two prostrations of recitation.

If a person repeatedly recites a verse of prostration while staying at the same place, then one prostration will be sufficient for him.

If a person recites a verse of prostration at a place, then changes his place and repeats recitation of the same verse, then two prostrations of recitation will be compulsory for him.

Change of place occurs when a person moves from one place to another.

Different portions of a room are considered de jure as a single place, no matter whether the room is small or large.

Different portions of a mosque are considered de jure as a single place, no matter whether the mosque is small or large.

If the place of a listener changes repeatedly, he will have to perform the prostration for each instance of recitation of the verse, no matter whether the place of the reciter changed or not.

It is detestable to recite a Qurānic chapter containing a verse of recitation and skip the verse of recitation.

If a listener is not in a position to perform prostration, then it is desirable for the reciter to recite the verse of prostration inaudibly.

**Manner of performing prostration of recitation**

The person should stand/sit up and go down for a single prostration saying Takbīr\(^{192}\) and lay his forehead on the floor. Then he should raise his forehead from the prostration saying Takbīr again. He should not raise his hands while saying Takbīrs, nor recite At Ṭahiyyāt, nor perform the ending Salām after completing the prostration.

There is only one essential part of prostration of recitation: placing the forehead on the floor, or an act which is de jure equivalent to it, like bowing or gesture for a sick person.

The two Takbīrs preceding and succeeding the prostration are traditions.

It is desirable to stand up for performing the prostration of recitation.

The prerequisites for validity of prostration of recitation are same as those for Salāh. The only exception is the prohibitive words of Salāh which is a prerequisite in Salāh but not so in prostration of recitation.

---

\(^{192}\) Saying اَللُ أَكْبَر (Allāhu Akbar) which means Allāh is the greatest.
Verses of prostration

Prostration of recitation is compulsory for 14 verses of the holy Qur'an:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Chapter No.</th>
<th>Verse No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Al A'rāf</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Ar Ra'd</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 An Nahl</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Al Isrā / Banū Isrā'il</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Maryam</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Al Haj</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Al Furqān</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 An Naml</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Alif Lām Mim As Sajdah</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Sād</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Hä Mim As Sajdah / Fussilat</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 An Najm</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Al Inshiqāq</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Al Alaq</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Friday Salāḥ

Allāh said:

إِذَا نُودِيَ لِلصَّلَاةِ مِنْ يَوْمٍ أُجَابَهُ فَأَسْتَعَوْا إِلَى نَظَّارٍ فَذَكَرَ وَأَنْصَتْهُ فَغَفُرَ لَهُ مَا بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ النَّجَمِ الْجَمِيعِ ثَلَاثَةٌ أَيَامٌ، وَمَنْ مَسَّ الْحَصَى فَقَدْ لَغَبَّ (القرآن 14:22)

When the call for Salāḥ is proclaimed on Friday, hasten for the remembrance of Allāh, and leave off business. That is much better for you, if you only knew.

Allāh's Prophet said:

مَنْ تَوَضَّأَ فَأَحْسَنَ الْوُضُوءَ، ثُمَّ أَتَى الْجُمَعَةَ، فَاسْتَمَعَ وَأَنْصَتَ، غُفِرَ لَهُ مَا بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ النَّجَمِ الْجَمِيعِ (مسلم: 798)

He who performed ablution well, then came to Friday prayer, listened (to the sermon), kept silence, all (his sins) between that time and the next Friday would be forgiven with three days extra. And he who touched pebbles caused an interruption. (EQ 9121)

Allāh’s Prophet said:

مَنْ تَرَكَ ثَلَاثَ جَمَعَ تَهَاوُنًا بِهَا، طَبَعَ اللَّهُ عَلَى قَلْبِهِ (سنن أبي داوود: 1922)

He who leaves the Friday prayer (continuously) for three Friday on account of slackness, Allāh will print a stamp on his heart. (EQ 15742)

Friday Salāḥ consists of two Salāḥ-units performed audibly. It is an individual obligation in its own right. It is not a substitute of Zuhr. However, if a person misses Friday Salāḥ, the four Salāḥ-units of Zuhr become obligatory for him.
Prerequisites for Friday Salāh to become obligatory

Friday Salāh is obligatory for a person who fulfills the following prerequisites:

1. He should be a male. Friday Salāh is not obligatory for a female.
2. He should be free. Friday Salāh is not obligatory for a slave.
3. He should be resident in a city\textsuperscript{193} or a large village equivalent de jure to a city. So, it is not obligatory for a traveler, nor for a person residing in a village.
4. He should be healthy. It is not obligatory for a sick person.
5. He should be safe. It is not obligatory for a person who is hiding in fear of a tyrant.
6. He should be able to see. It is not obligatory for a blind person.
7. He should be capable of walking. It is not obligatory for a person incapable of walking.

If a person on whom Friday Salāh is not obligatory, performs it, then his Salāh will be valid and the obligatoriness of Zuhr upon him will become void. In fact, it is desirable for him to perform Friday Salāh.

However, a woman should perform Zuhr in her house as she has been forbidden from attending congregational Salāh.

Prerequisites for validity of Friday Salāh

Friday Salāh is valid only if the following conditions are met:

1. City or its outskirts: Friday Salāh is not valid in villages\textsuperscript{194}. Holding Friday Salāh at several places in a city and its outskirts is valid.
2. Either the sovereign Caliph or his deputy\textsuperscript{195} should be present in the Friday Salāh.
3. The Friday Salāh should be held in the time of the Zuhr Salāh. It will not be valid if it is held before or after the time of Zuhr Salāh.
4. Arabic Sermon: It should be delivered in the time of Zuhr Salāh and before performing the Friday Salāh.
   It is essential that at least one person out of those for whom Friday Salāh is obligatory should be present to listen to the sermon.
5. General permission: The place where Friday Salāh is being held should be open to all who want to enter. Friday Salāh is not valid in a house whose gate has been closed to prevent people from entering.
6. Performing in congregation: Friday Salāh is not valid if the people perform it individually.

\textsuperscript{193} Jurists have held differing opinions regarding the definition of city. The famous definition is that a city is a locality that has a Muftī, an Amīr and a Qāzī who is authorized to implement most of the Allāh-decreed punishments. (A Muftī is an expert in Islamic jurisprudence who suggests to the ignorant people the Islamic rulings pertaining to their particular situations. An Amīr is a governor with full executive powers. A Qāzī is a judge who gives verdict in disputes and decides the punishments for crimes.) Jurists of later times are of the opinion that a city is a locality where the largest mosque is not sufficient for all its inhabitants. And a village is a locality not meeting this criteria.

\textsuperscript{194} i.e. small villages which are not equivalent de jure to city.

\textsuperscript{195} Jurists of later times have delivered the ruling that Friday Salāh and Īd Salāh should be held even in the absence of Muslim sovereign or his deputy in countries without Islamic government, Muslim sovereign (caliph) and his deputies. The local Muslims should appoint the Imām for Salāh and the Qāzī through mutual consultation and consensus.
Congregation for a Friday Salāh is valid if there are at least three men other than the Imām. If a traveler or a sick person is the Imām in Friday Salāh, it will be valid.

Traditions of the Arabic sermon

The following things are traditions in the Arabic sermon:

1. The sermon-deliverer should be free from de facto and de jure filths.
2. The sermon-deliverer should be covering his organs to be hidden.
3. The sermon-deliverer should sit on the pulpit before starting the sermon.
4. Salāh-call should be delivered in front of the sermon-deliverer.
5. He should deliver the sermon while standing.
6. He should start the sermon with praise of Allāh.
7. He should extol Allāh as is appropriate for Him.
8. He should deliver the two testimonies regarding oneness of Allāh and the prophethood of Muhammad ﷺ.
9. He should recite the supplication of blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ.
10. He should counsel and exhort the people and recite at least one verse of the holy Qurān.
11. He should deliver two sermons separating them with a short sitting.
12. He should begin the second sermon as well with praise and extolment of Allāh and supplication for blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ.
13. He should supplicate for and seek Allāh’s forgiveness for all male and female Believers during the second sermon.
14. The Arabic sermon should be delivered in a loud voice so that the audience is able to hear.
15. He should keep the sermon short, to the length of a Qurānic chapter in the Tiwāl e Mufassal category.

Other rulings related to Friday Salāh

At the first Salāh-call, it is compulsory to hasten and leave off business.

When the Imām comes out for the Arabic sermon, then neither Salāh nor conversation is permitted. So one should neither respond to a Salām greeting nor respond to a sneezer till the Friday Salāh is over.

It is detestable for the sermon-deliverer to lengthen the Friday sermon.

It is detestable for the sermon-deliverer to leave out any of the traditions of the Arabic sermon.

It is detestable for those attending the Arabic sermon to eat, drink, play about or turn around.

On standing up at the pulpit, the sermon-deliverer should not say the Salām-greeting to the audience.

If a person catches up the Friday Salāh during At Tahiyyāt or during a prostration of forgetfulness, then he has caught up with the Friday Salāh, and he should complete only two Salāh-units after the Imām’s ending Salām.

196 Tiwāl e Mufassal comprises Qurānic chapters 49 to 85.
It is detestable for the excused and the prisoners to perform Zuhr Salāh in congregation on Friday inside a city.

**Rulings of the two Īds**

Anas reports:

قَدِمَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ ﷺ الْمَدِينَةَ وَلَهُمْ يَوْمَانِ يَلْلَبُونَ فِيهِمَا، فَقَالَ: مَا هَذَانِ الْيَوْمَانِ؟ قَالُوا: كَانُا نَلْلَبُ فِيهِمَا فِي الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ، فَقَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ ﷺ: " إِنَّ اللَّهَ قَدْ أَبْدَلَكُمْ بِهِمَا خَيْرًا مِنْهُمَا: يَوْمَ الَّضْحَى، وَيَوْمَ الْفِطْرِ."

When Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ came to Madinah, the people had two days on which they engaged in games. He asked: What are these two days (what is the significance)? They said: We used to engage ourselves on them in the pre-Islamic period. Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said: Allāh has substituted for them something better than them, the day of sacrifice and the day of the breaking of the fast (Īd of sacrifice and Īd of fast-breaking).

The Salāhs of the two Īds is compulsory. It consists of two Salāḥ-units in which Qurān is recited audibly. It is performed after the sun has risen up by around the length of a spear. It contains special Takbïrs called Additional Takbïrs: three in the first Salāḥ-unit after saying the invocation of Subḫān-Allāhumma and three in the second Salāḥ-unit before bowing. The Arabic sermon for the Īd Salāhs is delivered after the Salāh.

**For whom is the Īd Salāh compulsory?**

Īd Salāh is compulsory only for those people on whom Friday Salāh is obligatory.

Thus, Īd Salāh is compulsory for a healthy, free, resident and secure man capable of seeing and walking.

Īd Salāh is not obligatory for woman, sick man, slave, traveler, blind man and a man living in fear.

Similarly, Īd is not compulsory for a man who is unable to walk.

If the people on whom the Īd Salāh is not obligatory perform it with other people, their Salāh will be valid.

**Prerequisites for validity of Īd Salāh**

Īd Salāh will be valid only if the following prerequisites are fulfilled:

1. The place should be a city or its outskirts.
2. The Muslim sovereign or his deputy should be present in the Īd Salāh.
3. General permission to attend the Salāh.
4. Congregation: The congregation for Īd Salāh is valid if one person other than the Imām is present.

---

197 Abū Dawūd 1134, EQ 15824
198 (Subḫān-Allāhumma wa biḫamdika wa tabārak-asmuka wa taʿāla jadduka wa lá ilāha ghairuk.)
5. The time: The time for Īd Salāh starts when the sun rises to almost the height of a spear and ends when the sun reaches the zenith. Īd Salāh is valid without the Arabic sermon but it is detestable.

īd Salāh is valid if the Arabic sermon is delivered before the Salāh but it is detestable.

Desirable acts for the day of fast-breaking

The Īd of fast-breaking occurs on the 1st of Shawwāl, the 10th month of the Islamic Hijrī calendar.

The following acts are desirable on the day of the Īd of fast-breaking:

1. Getting up early from sleep
2. Performing Fajr Salāh in the local mosque
3. Cleaning the mouth with a tooth-stick
4. Bathing
5. Wearing one’s best garments
6. Applying perfume
7. Eating before going to the special mosque for Īd
8. Paying the charity of fast-breaking before going to the special mosque for Īd, if it is compulsory for him
9. Giving more in charity as per his means
10. Displaying cheerfulness and jubilation
11. Going early to the special mosque for Īd walking and saying Takbīr inaudibly: He should stop saying Takbīrs upon reaching the special mosque.
12. Returning from the special mosque by another way.

It is detestable to perform supererogatory Salāhs before the Īd Salāh at home.

Performing supererogatory Salāhs after the Īd Salāh is detestable in the special mosque for Īd, but not at home.

Manner of performing the Salāhs of the two Īds

The person intending to perform Īd Salāh should stand behind the Imām with the intention of performing Īd Salāh199 and following the Imām. He should say the prohibitive Takbīr, then recite the invocation of Subḥān-Allāhumma200 and say Takbīrs thrice with the Imām. For each Takbīr, he should raise his hand up to the level of his ears. After the three Takbīrs, he should get quiet. The Imām would recite inaudibly: "بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ (Bis-millāhi r-raḥmān r-raḥīm) and "اَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنْ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ (A`ūzu billāhi minash shaiṭān-ir rajīm) and 199 On the day of the Īd of fast-breaking, he should make the intention of performing the Salāh for the Īd of fast-breaking. On the day of the Īd of sacrifice, he should make the intention of performing the Salāh for the Īd of sacrifice.
200 (Subḥān-Allāhumma wa biḥamdika wa tabārāk-asmuka wa ta`ālā jadduka wa lā ilāha ghairuk.) 201 I seek refuge with Allāh from Satan, the outcast. (Bukhārī 6115, EQ 5766)
Then he should recite audibly the Qur’anic chapter of Fātihah followed by another Qur’anic chapter. It is desirable for the Imām to recite the Qur’anic chapter of Al A’lā in the first Salāḥ-unit. The Salāḥ-performer should then bow and prostrate along with the Imām as one does in the five daily Salāhs. When he stands up with the Imām for the second Salāḥ-unit, he should stand without saying anything. The Imām will then recite Bismillāh-ir Raḥmānir Raḥīm inaudibly followed by the audible recitations of Al Fātihah and another Qur’anic chapter. It is desirable for the Imām to recite Al Ghāshiyah in the second Salāḥ-unit. When the Imām completes the recitations and says the three Takbīrs, he should also say them. For each additional Takbīr, he should raise his hands up to the level of his ears. Then he should bow, prostrate and complete the rest of the Salāḥ like the daily Salāhs. On completion of Salāḥ, the Imām should deliver two Arabic sermons in which he will teach the people the rulings of the corresponding ʿĪd.

If the Imām says the additional Takbīrs of the second Salāḥ-unit before reciting Al Fātihah, then it is valid. But the preferable method is to first complete the recitations and then say the additional Takbīrs in the second Salāḥ-unit.

It is permissible to postpone the Salāḥ of ʿĪd to the next day if there is an excusable difficulty.

If a person misses ʿĪd-Salāḥ with the Imām, he should not late-perform it as it is not valid without congregation.

Rulings of the ʿĪd of sacrifice

The ʿĪd of sacrifice occurs on the 10th of Zul Ḥijjah, the 12th month of the Islamic Hijrī calendar.

Rulings of the ʿĪd of sacrifice are similar to those for the ʿĪd of fast-breaking and the Salāḥ of the ʿĪd of sacrifice is similar to the Salāḥ of the ʿĪd of fast-breaking.

The only exceptions are:

1. The man should eat after Salāḥ on the occasion of the ʿĪd of sacrifice.
2. He should say the Takbīrs on the way audibly.
3. The Imām should teach the rulings of sacrifice and the Takbīrs of Tashrīq in the Arabic sermon of the ʿĪd of sacrifice.
4. If there is an excusable difficulty, then it is permissible to postpone the Salāḥ of the ʿĪd of sacrifice to the 12th of Zul Ḥijjah.

It is compulsory to say the Takbīr of Tashrīq once audibly – starting from the Fajr Salāḥ on the 9th of Zul Ḥijjah and ending at the Asr Salāḥ on the 13th of Zul Ḥijjah. It is compulsory for every person who

---

202 With the name of Allāh, the All-Merciful, the Very-Merciful.
203 With the name of Allāh, the All-Merciful, the Very-Merciful.
204 The Imām will perform bowing with the fourth Takbīr. In the fourth Takbīr, none should raise his hand.
205 Takbīr of tashrīq: saying Allāhu akbar, Allāhu akbar, Lā ilāhā illallāh, wallāhu akbar, Allāhu akbar, wa lillāhi ḥamd( meaning: “Allāh is the greatest. Allāh is the greatest. There is no god but Allāh. Allāh is the greatest. Allāh is the greatest. All praise be to Allāh.”)
performs an obligatory Salāh, no matter whether he performs the Salāh in congregation, or as singleton, whether he is a traveler or a resident, a man or a woman, a villager or a city-dweller.

**Eclipse Salāh**

Imām Bukhārī quotes Abū Bakrah رضي الله عنه as saying:

خسفت الشمسعلى عهد رسول الله صلّى الله عليه وسلم فخرج يجهز رداءه، حتى أنهى إلى المسجد، وقاتل الناس إليه، فصلّى بهم ركعتين، فأخجلت الشمس، فقال: "إن الشمس والقمر آيتان من آيات الله، إنهما لا يخفسان لموت أحد، وإذا كان ذلك فصلّوا واذعوا حتى يكشف ما يكشف" (البخاري:٤٢٢)

In the life-time of the Allah’s Apostle (p.b.u.h) the sun eclipsed and he went out dragging his clothes till he reached the Mosque. The people gathered around him and he led them and offered two Rakat. When the sun (eclipse) cleared, he said, "The sun and the moon are two signs amongst the signs of Allah; they do not eclipse because of the death of someone, and so when an eclipse occurs, pray and invoke Allah till the eclipse is over." (EQ 1011)

It is tradition to perform two or four Salāh-units in congregation at the time of solar eclipse. The congregational Salāh is emphasized tradition at the time of solar eclipse. At the time of lunar eclipse, congregational Salāh is not a tradition. People should perform Salāh individually without congregation at the time of lunar eclipse. There is no Salāh-call, Salāh-start-call, or the Arabic sermon. Instead, the announcement should be made with these words: (Congregate for Salāh.)

It is tradition for the Imām to make the recitation, bowing and prostration long in the Salāh of solar eclipse. On completion of the Salāh, the Imām should start supplication and the Imām-followers should say أَمْيَنُ (Āmīn206) at his supplications. This should go on till the sun comes out of the eclipse.

**Rain-prayer**

Abdullāh Ibnu Abbās reported:

خرج رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم متبذلاً متواضعًا، متصراً، حتى أنى المسجد - زاد عثمان، فرفع على المنبر، ثم أتفق، ولم يخطب خطبكم هذه، ولكن لم يزل في الدعاء، والتصرع، والتَّكْبِرِ، ثم صلى ركعتين، كما يصلي في العيد. (أبو داود:١١٦٥)

The Apostle of Allah (peace_be_upon_him) went out wearing old clothes in a humble and lowly manner until he reached the place of prayer. He then ascended the pulpit, but he did not deliver the sermon as you deliver (usually). He remained engaged in making supplication, showing humbleness (to Allah) and uttering the takbir (Allah is most great). He then offered two rak'ahs of Salāh as done on the 'Id (festival). (EQ 15857)

In Arabic, it is called َسَلَاتُ-الْإِسْتِسْقَاء. Istisqā’ literally means asking Allāh to provide water when in need. It has been established that Allāh’s Prophet went for rain-prayer and supplicated to Allāh.

---

206 Āmīn: So be it!
According to Imāms Abū Yūsuf and Muhammad, the Imām should lead the Salāh for rain. The Salāh will consist of two Salāh-units and the Qurānic recitation in it will be audible. After the Salāh, the Imām should deliver two Arabic sermons.

It is desirable that the people go out of the populated region of the locality three days without break for the Salāh for rain.

It is desirable that the people should go walking in old, washed clothes or clothes with patches. They should walk obsequiously, humbly and submissively keeping their heads lowered.

It is desirable that the people give something in supererogatory charity every day before going out for Salāh.

It is desirable that they observe fast.

It is desirable that they repeatedly seek Allāh’s forgiveness from sins.

It is desirable that they take their animals, old people and children along with them.

The Imām should stand up for supplication facing the Salāh-direction with raised hands.

The Imām-followers should sit facing the Salāh-direction and say Āmīn at the Imām’s supplications.

In his supplication, the Imām should say this:

اللَّهُمَّ اسْقِنَا غَيْثًا مُغِيثًا، مَرِيئًا مَرِيلًا، نَافِلًا غَيْرَ ضَار ٍ، عَاجِلًَ غَيْرَ آجِلٍ

اللَّهُمَّ اسْقِ عِبَادَكَ، وَبَهَائِمَكَ، وَانْشُرْ رَحْمَتَكَ، وَأَحْيِ بَلَدَكَ الْمَي ِتَ

اللَّهُمَّ أَنْتَ اَللَّهِ، لَإِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ الْغَنِيُّ، وَنَحْنُ الْفُقَرَاءُ، أَنْزِلْ عَلَيْنَا الْغَيْثَ،

وَاجْلِلْ مَا أَنْزَلْتَ لَنَا قُوَّةً وَبَلََغًا إِلَى حِينٍ.

(OJ 15859, 15866, 15863)

O Allah! give us rain which will replenish us, abundant, fertilising and profitable, not injurious, granting it now without delay. O Allah! Provide water for Thy servants and Thy cattle, display Thy mercy and give life to Thy dead land. O Allah, Thou art Allah, there is no deity but Thou, the Rich, while we are the poor. Send down the rain upon us and make what Thou sendest down a strength and satisfaction for a time.

207 In the opinion of Imām Abū Hanīfah, the congregation for Salāh for rain is not a tradition.
Funeral rites

What should be done to a person approaching death?

Alläh’s Prophet said:

من كان آخر كلامه لا إله إلا الله ودخل الجنة. (أبو داود ٤٢٢، إي كيو ٢٢٨٧٢)

If a person’s last words are “there is no god but Alläh”, he shall enter Paradise.

When the signs of approaching death appear on a person, it is tradition to make him lie on his right side with his face towards Ka'bah. It is also permissible to make him lie on his back so that his feet are in the direction of Ka'bah. His head is raised a little so that he faces Ka'bah.

When the signs of approaching death appear on a person, it is desirable to prompt him to recite the two testimonies. The method of prompting is that someone else should audibly recite the two testimonies near him so that the dying person is able to hear him. However, he should not be ordered: “Recite”. If perchance, he says “No”, this will lead to ill-opinion among the people about him.

It is desirable to bring the most beloved of his family-members, relations and neighbors to him.

Reciting the Quränic chapter of Yäsîn near him is also desirable as a hadith tells us:

ما من مريض تقرأ عليه "يس" إلا مات رياض وحشر يوم القيامة رياض. (البدر المنيز ٩/٩٥)

If the Quränic chapter Yäsîn is recited near a sick person and he dies, he will die satiated and on the day of Judgement, he will be raised satiated.

Bathing the deceased

What should be done to a dying person before bathing him?

When the person dies, it is desirable to tie up his beard with a wide band of cloth which will encircle the top of his head till his beard. It is also desirable to shut his eyes.

The person shutting the deceased’s eyes should say:

208 The two testimonies: (Asfā’hadu allā ilāha illallāhu wa asfā’hadu anna muhammadan àbduhu warasūlūh = I testify that there is no god except Alläh and that Muhammad is His servant and messenger.)
Bismillahi wa àlä millati rasûlûhi sallallâhi ûalaihi wa sallam. Allâhumma yassir âläihi amrah, wasahhil âläihi mà ba’âlah, wäsìd hu biliqäik, wäjàl mà k̅h̅araja ilaïhi k̅h̅airam mimmà k̅h̅araja minh. Allâh! Make his case easy for him, make easy what is to come to him, bless him with a meeting with You, and make his destination better than what he has departed from.

A heavy object should be placed over his abdomen to prevent its swelling.

His hands should be placed at his sides.

Placing his hands over his chest is not permissible.

Reciting the holy Qurân audibly near him before bathing him is detestable.

But this recitation is forbidden only if the reciter is near the deceased. If he is away, then it is not detestable.

Announcing his death is desirable.

It is desirable to quickly complete his enshrouding and burial.

**Rulings of bathing the deceased**

Bathing the deceased is sufficiency obligation for the living ones.

When some people perform the deceased-bathing, the obligation is fulfilled on behalf of the rest.

If no one does it, all are held sinners.

Deceased-bathing is obligatory when the following prerequisites are fulfilled:

1. He should be a Muslim.
2. Major part of the deceased’s body, or half of his body along with his head should be found.
3. He should not be a martyr killed in the course of exalting Allâh’s din. A martyr is not bathed, rather he is buried in his blood and clothes.
4. It should not be a miscarried fetus\(^{209}\) which came out dead without complete body-formation. If the newborn comes out alive such that his cry is heard or activity is observed in him, bathing him will be compulsory. It does not matter whether he came out before the completion of gestation period or after it. Similarly if the newborn came out dead, but his body was completely formed, he will be bathed.

**Manner of bathing the deceased**

The deceased should be placed on a bedstead around which a thurible has been circumambulated odd number of times. His organs-to-be-hidden – from navel to knees including both – should be covered. His clothes should be taken off from under the cover. The Salih-ABLUTION should be performed on him.

---

\(^{209}\) A miscarried fetus is one whose organs were not completely formed. Such a fetus will not be bathed in the customary way, rather water will be poured down upon him.
only difference will be that instead of rinsing out the mouth and sniffing into the nose, his mouth and nose should be wiped with a cloth-rag wet with water.

Then water boiled with jujube or glasswort should be poured upon him. If jujube or glasswort is not available, the deceased should be bathed in pure water.

His head and beard should be washed with hollyhock or soap.

He should be lain down over his left side and water poured over him till it reaches the parts adjacent to his bedstead-touching region.

He should then be lain down over his right side and water poured over him till it reaches the parts adjacent to his bedstead-touching region.

Next, he should be made to sit down taking support from the bather behind him. His abdomen should be wiped softly and whatever comes out of the fore or hind orifice should be washed away. There is no need to repeat the bathing. He should be rubbed dry.

Perfume should be applied to his beard and head.

Camphor should be applied to the body-parts which touch the ground during prostration.

Neither his nails nor his hairs should be cut.

Neither his head-hair nor his beard should be combed.

A wife may bathe her husband if another man is not available to bathe him.

The husband will not bathe his wife even though another woman to bathe her is not available. Instead, he should make his deceased wife do Tayammum with a cloth-rag.

It is permissible for a man to bathe a boy child or a girl child. For a woman also, bathing either of them is permissible.

**Shroud**

**Rulings of enshrouding the deceased**

Enshrouding the deceased is sufficiency obligation for Muslims.

When some people perform the deceased-enshrouding, the obligation is fulfilled on behalf of the rest.

If no one does it, all are held sinners.

The minimum enshrouding which fulfills the sufficiency obligation on behalf of Muslims is that quantity of cloth which covers the entire body of the deceased.
The shroud of the deceased will be obtained from his lawful wealth with which no one else’ right is associated.

If he does not have wealth, providing the shroud will be compulsory upon the person on whom his expenses were compulsory while he lived.

If the person on whom his expenses were compulsory does not have wealth, his shroud will be provided for by the Caliphate Treasury.

If Muslims do not have Treasury, or they have the Treasury but it is not possible to obtain fund from there, then his shroud is compulsory upon the well-off section of the Muslim ummah.

**Shroud for man**

**Kinds of shroud**
There are three kings of shroud:

1. Traditional shroud
2. Sufficiency shroud
3. Minimum compulsory shroud

The traditional shroud for man is shirt, wraparound and envelope.

The sufficiency shroud for man is wraparound and envelope. Less than this is detestable.

The minimum compulsory shroud for man is whatever is available in times of dire shortage even if it is the quantity of cloth just enough to cover his organs to be hidden.

The preferable shroud is the one made of cotton and white in color.

The shirt should be from the neck to the foot.

The shirt will have no sleeve.

The wraparound should be from the top of head to the foot.

The envelope should be longer than the wraparound by a cubit.

**Manner of enshrouding**
The envelope should be spread first on the bedstead, then the wraparound should be placed over the envelope, then the shirt over the wraparound. The deceased should then be placed and clothed in the shirt. The wraparound should be wrapped over him, first from the left, then from the right. Similarly, the envelope should be wrapped over him, first from the left, then from the right. The shroud should be tied at both ends so that it does not get loose and spread out.
Shroud for woman

**Kinds of shroud**
The traditional shroud for woman is cloth-rag, headdress, shirt, wraparound and envelope.

The sufficiency shroud for woman is headdress, wraparound and envelope.

The minimum compulsory shroud for woman is whatever is available in times of dire shortage.

It is permissible for the cloth-rag to be from breast to navel.

**Manner of enshrouding**
The envelope should be spread first on the bedstead, then the wraparound should be placed over the envelope, then the shirt over the wraparound. The deceased should then be placed and clothed in the shirt. Her head-hair should be parted into two plaits and placed above her breast over her shirt. The headdress should be placed over her head without wrapping it around her or tying it. The wraparound should then be wrapped over her, first from the left, then from the right. Then her breast should be tied with cloth-rag. Finally, the envelope should be wrapped over her, first from the left, then from the right. The shroud should be tied at both ends so that it does not get loose and spread out.

Funeral Salāh

**Rulings of funeral Salāh**
Funeral Salāh for the deceased is sufficiency obligation for Muslims.

If a single Muslim performs funeral Salāh for a deceased, the obligation is fulfilled on behalf of the rest.

If no one performs the funeral Salāh, all are held sinners.

Performing funeral Salāh is compulsory for every person on whom the obligatory Salāhs are mandatory provided he is aware of the deceased’s death.

If a person is not aware of the death, funeral Salāh is not obligatory for him.

There are two essentials in funeral Salāh:

1. Four Takbīrs
   Every Takbīr in the funeral Salāh has the status of a Salāh-unit.
2. Standing
   Funeral Salāh in sitting posture will be invalid unless there is an excusable difficulty.

**Prerequisites for funeral Salāh**
Funeral Salāh is valid only if the following prerequisites are fulfilled:
1. The deceased should be a Muslim. Funeral Salāh for a Disbeliever is not permissible.
2. The deceased should be pure from de facto and de jure filth. So, funeral Salāh for him before bathing him is not valid.
3. The deceased should be present. Funeral Salāh in absentia is not permissible.
4. The deceased should lie ahead of the Salāh-performers. The Salāh will be invalid if he is kept behind the Salāh-performers.
5. The deceased should be placed on the ground.
   If he is placed on a bedstead kept on the ground, then also funeral Salāh for him is valid.
   If the deceased is placed on a vehicle or on an animal, then Salāh for him will be invalid.
   Similarly, if the deceased is held on people’s hands or on their shoulders, Salāh for him will not be permissible.
   However, if the deceased is placed on a vehicle or held in people’s hands due to an excusable difficulty, Salāh for him will be valid.

Traditions of funeral Salāh

1. Standing of the Imām near the chest of the deceased, whether man or woman.
2. Reciting exotolment\(^{210}\) after the first Takbīr.
3. Saying the supplication of blessings for the Prophetﷺ after the second Takbīr.
4. Supplicating for the deceased after the third Takbīr.

If the deceased is adult, whether man or woman, the Salāh-performer should say in supplication:

اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لَهُ وَمِمَّنَاثَا، وَشَاهِدَا وَغَافِلَا، وَصِيَّنَرَا وَكَبِيرَا، وَذَكَرْنَا وَأَنْتَنَا، اللَّهُمَّ مِنْ أَحْيَيْنَا مَنْ فَأْحِيَهُ عَلَى الْإِسْلَامِ، وَمِنْ تُوفِيَتَهُ مَنْ فَنُوقَةٌ عَلَى الإِيمَانِ.

Allāhumma-ḡīr liḥayyīnā wa mayyitinā, wa ṣ̅āḥ̅āhinā wa ṣ̅āḥ̅īrinā wa zakarinā wa untīnānā. Allāhumma man ṣ̅aḥ̅īta hu minnā ṣ̅āḥ̅īhī āl-alislāmi, wa man taṭawaffāta hu minnā fatawaṭfāhu āl-alīmān.\(^{211}\)

If the deceased is a male child, the Salāh-performer should say in supplication:

اللَّهُمَّ اجْلَلْهُ لَنَا فَرَطًا، وَاجْلَلْهُ لَنَا أَجْرًا وَذَكَرِنَا وَشَاهِدِنَا، وَأَجْلَلْهُ لَنَا شَافِلًا وَمُشَافَلًا.

Allāhumma-jālu lanā farātā, wājālu lanā ajra-ṭ- wa zuk̅h̅ā, wājālu lanā ṣ̅aḥ̅āīm mus̅aḥ̅affā.\(^{213}\)

---

\(^{210}\) Exotolment or Thanā is: (Subḥānak- allāhumma wa biḥamdika wa tabārak-asμuka wa ta’ālā jadduka wa lā ilāha ghairuk = O Allāh! You are without blemish, and You are praiseworthy. Your name is blessed and your glory is exalted. There is no God besides you. – Tirmīzī 242, EQ 25935)

\(^{211}\) The preferable supplication of blessings for the Prophet ﷺ:

 rulings on Salāh and the importance of correct standing, we refer to the teachings of the Imāms and scholars, as well as the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ. The Salāh must be performed in a state of faith.

\(^{212}\) Allāh! Forgive our living and our dead, those who are present and those who are absent, our young and our old, our males and our females. Allah, whomever of us You allow to live, make him live in Islam, and whomever of us You cause to die, let him die in (a state of) faith. (Ibn Majah 1498, EQ 31587)
If the deceased is a female child, the Salāh-performer should say in supplication:

َّ
اللَّهُم
اجْلَلْهَا
لَنَا
فَرَطًا،
وَاجْلَلْهَا
لَنَا
أَجْرًا
وَذُخْرًا،
وَاجْلَلْهَا
لَنَا
شَافِلَةً
مُشَافَلَةً

Allāhumma-jālhā lanā farāṭā, wājālhā lanā ajra-wa zuk̅h̅rā, wājālhā lanā shāfiātām mus̅h̅affāh.214

He should end the Salāh by performing the ending Salām after the fourth Takbīr.

He should not raise his hands except at the time of the first Takbīr.

It is desirable that the number of Salāh-rows be three, five, seven, or some other odd number.

**Other rulings related to funeral Salāh**

If the deceased’s guardian has performed funeral Salāh for the deceased, it should not be repeated.

If the deceased has been buried without funeral Salāh for him, the Salāh should be performed for him at his grave provided his body is not likely to have decomposed.

If there are several bodies, it is preferable to perform the funeral Salāh separately for each deceased.

It is permissible to perform funeral Salāh for all the deceased persons together.

If the Imām performs funeral Salāh for all the deceased persons together, the bodies should be placed in long row in front of the Imām. The bodies of men should be kept first, then the bodies of children, then those of women.

The newborn in whom life is observed while he gets born should be named and Salāh performed for him.

If life is not observed in the newborn while he gets born, Salāh should not be performed for him. He should be bathed215, wrapped in cloth and buried.

Performing funeral Salāh in a mosque where congregational Salāhs are held is detestable unless there is an excusable difficulty.

If funeral Salāh is performed in a mosque where congregational Salāhs are held due to an excusable difficulty, then it is not detestable.

If a person finds the Imām between two Takbīrs, he should wait. At the next Takbīr, he should follow the Imām in Salāh and recitation of supplications. Then he should late-perform the missed Takbīrs.

---

213 Allāh! Make him a forerunner for our salvation. Make it (the affliction of his separation) a thing of reward and deposit for us. Make him the one who will intercede on our behalf and whose intercession will be accepted by You. (Fathul Qadir 2/125, Ta’lim-ul Islâm 4/88)

214 Allāh! Make her a forerunner for our salvation. Make it (the affliction of her separation) a thing of reward and deposit for us. Make her the one who will intercede on our behalf and whose intercession will be accepted by You. (Ta’lim-ul Islâm 4/89)

215 For details, see the topic “Rulings of bathing the deceased”. 

119 of 177
If a person has missed some of the Takbïrs with the Imâm, he should later perform them before the deceased’s body is lifted.

If a person comes between the first and the second Takbïrs, he should follow the Imâm in Saläh without waiting for the second Takbïr.

If a person comes after the fourth Takbïr and before the ending Salâm, he has missed the funeral Saläh.

If a person commits suicide, he should be bathed and funeral Saläh should be performed for him.

If the person died while fighting in the cause of his tribe or nation, then Saläh should not be performed for him.

If a person killed his parent unjustly, Saläh should not be performed for him.

Similarly, Saläh should not be performed for a robber if he is killed fighting.

**Manner of funeral Saläh**

The Imâm should stand near the chest of the deceased. The Imâm-followers should make Saläh-rows behind him. Each should then make intention of performing the obligatory funeral Saläh as worship to Alläh. The Imâm-follower should also make intention of following the Imâm in Saläh.

The Saläh-performer should say the first Takbïr after raising his hand. He should recite the extolment\(^{216}\). He should say the second Takbïr without raising his hands and recite the supplication of blessings\(^{217}\) for the Prophet ﷺ. He should say the third Takbïr without raising his hands and supplicate for the deceased and other Muslims\(^{218}\). He should say the fourth Takbïr without raising his hands and then

---

\(^{216}\) Extolment or Thanâ is: (Subhânâk-allâhumma wa bihamdika wa tabârak-asmuka wa taʿâlâ jadîka wa lâ ilâha ghairuk = O Alläh! You are without blemish, and You are praiseworthy. Your name is blessed and your glory is exalted. There is no God besides you. – Tirmizi 242, EQ 25935)

\(^{217}\) The preferable supplication of blessings for the Prophet ﷺ is:

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، كَمَا صَلَّيْتَ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ، إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ

Allâhumma sâlî àlâ Muḥammadiñ wa àlâ àli Muḥammadin kamâ šallaita àlâ Ibraḥîma wa àlâ àli Ibraḥîma, innaka hameedum majid . Allâhumma bârik àlâ Muḥammadiñ wa àlâ àli Muḥammadin kamâ bârakta àlâ Ibraḥîma wa àlâ àli Ibraḥîma, innaka hameedum majid .

O Allâh! Send Your Mercy on Muhammad and on the family of Muhammad, as You sent Your Mercy on Abraham, and on the family of Abraham, for You are the Most Praise-worthy, the Most Glorious. O Allâh! Send Your Blessings on Muhammad and the family of Muhammad, as You sent your Blessings on Abraham and on the family of Abraham, for You are the Most Praise-worthy, the Most Glorious. (Bukhârî 3370, EQ 3168)

\(^{218}\) If the deceased is adult, whether man or woman, the Saläh-performer should say in supplication:

اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِيِّ نَا وَمَيِّ نَا، وَشَاهِدِنَا وَغَائِبِنَا، وَصَغِيرِنَا وَكَبِيرِنَا، وَذَكَرِنَا وَأُنْثَانَا، اللَّهُمَّ مَنْ أَحْيَيْتَهُ مِنَّا فَأَحْيِهِ عَلَى الْسَّلَامِ، وَمَنْ تَوَفَّيْتَهُ مِنَّا تَوَفَّهُ عَلَى الْيَمَانِ.

Allâhumma-ḡfir liįhayîinä wa mayyitinä, wa šâhâdinä wa ḡâbinä, wa šâgirînä wa kâbirînä, wa zakarinä wa ūnţânanä. Allâhumma man aḥyaitâhu minnä fa-ḥîyi-al-ʿalîsîmâ, wa man tawâffaitâhu minnâ fatawâffahû al-ʿalîmân.
perform the two ending Salâms to his right and to his left. The Imâm should say the Takbîrs audibly and say all other things inaudibly. The Imâm-followers should say everything inaudibly.

**Burial**

**Rulings of carrying the bier**

Carrying the deceased to the graveyard is sufficiency obligation for Muslims.

Therefore, every Muslim should take the initiative in carrying the barrier.

The holy Prophet, صلى الله عليه وسلم, carried the bier of Sâ’d bin Mu‘âz (May Allâh be pleased with him).

It is tradition that four people carry the bier.

It is tradition that every carrier carry the bier for forty steps.

The bier should be carried at a fast walking pace. But the pace should not be too fast lest the deceased is shaken.

Walking behind the bier is preferable to walking in front of it.

Sitting before the bier is placed on the ground is detestable.

**Rulings of burying the dead**

It is tradition to keep the depth of the grave at least half of man-height. It is preferable to make it a little deeper.

The niche-grave is preferable to the ditch-grave except if the earth is loose.

---

Allâh! Forgive our living and our dead, those who are present and those who are absent, our young and our old, our males and our females. Allah, whomever of us You allow to live, make him live in Islam, and whomever of us You cause to die, let him die in (a state of) faith. (Ibn Mâjah 1498, EQ 31587)

If the deceased is a male child, the Salâh-performer should say in supplication:

لاَ تَّاعِبُنَا فَرَطًا، وَلاَ أَجْرًا، وَذُخْرًا، وَلاَ شَافِلًا مُشَفَّلًا

Allâhumma-jâlhu lanâ faraẗä, wâjîlhu lanâ ajraṇ-wa zuk̅h̅râ, wâjîlhu lanâ s̅h̅äfiàm mus̅h̅affâ.

Allâh! Make him a forerunner for our salvation. Make it (the affliction of his separation) a thing of reward and deposit for us. Make him the one who will intercede on our behalf and whose intercession will be accepted by You.

(Fathul Qadïr 2/125, Ta’lîm-ul Islâm 4/88)

If the deceased is a female child, the Salâh-performer should say in supplication:

لاَ تَّاعِبُنَا فَرَطًا، وَلاَ أَجْرًا، وَذُخْرًا، وَلاَ شَافِلَةً مُشَافَلَةً

Allâhumma-jâlhâ lanâ faraẗä, wâjîlhâ lanâ ajraṇ-wa zuk̅h̅râ, wâjîlhu lanâ s̅h̅äfiâṭam mus̅h̅affâ.

Allâh! Make her a forerunner for our salvation. Make it (the affliction of her separation) a thing of reward and deposit for us. Make her the one who will intercede on our behalf and whose intercession will be accepted by You.

(Ta’lîm-ul Islâm 4/89)
The deceased should be placed in the grave from the Salâh-direction.

The person placing the body inside the grave should say: (Bismillâhi wa alla millati rasûllallâh = With Allâh’s name and upon Allâh’s Prophet’s religion.)

The deceased should be lain in the grave on his right side facing the Salâh-direction.

The tying knots of the shroud should be undone after placing the deceased inside the grave.

If the deceased is a woman, the grave should be covered with a cloth-sheet overhead while she is entered into the grave. If the deceased is a woman, there is no need of covering the grave.

The grave should be covered with adobe bricks or bamboos after placing the body in the niche or ditch of the grave.

Covering the grave with baked bricks or timbers is detestable. However, if adobe bricks and bamboos are not available, then using them is not detestable.

It is desirable that each person present at the burial throw three handfuls of earth using both his hands together.

While throwing the first handful, he should say: (Minhâ khâlaqânâkum219).

While throwing the second handful, he should say: (Wâ fihâ nu’dukum220).

While throwing the third handful, he should say: (Wâ minhâ nûkhrijukum târatan ukhrâ221).

Then the earth should be thrown over the grave so that it is closed. The earth-heap should be made like camel-hump. It should not be made square-shaped.

Constructing a structure over the grave for adornment and ostentation is prohibited. Making a construction for fortifying it is also detestable.

Burying inside a room is detestable as this is one of the special privileges of prophets (Allâh’s peace be upon them!).

In case of a dire need, more than one person may be buried in the same grave.

When more than one person is buried in a single grave, it is desirable to separate two bodies with earth.

If a person dies in a ship, he should be bathed and enshrouded. Funeral Salâh should be performed for him. Then he should be placed in the ocean if land is far away and it is feared that the body will start decomposing by the time land is reached.

219 From this (dust) We created you. (Qurân 20:55)
220 In this we shall put you back. (Qurân 20:55)
221 From this We shall raise you up once again (Qurân 20:55)
It is desirable to bury the deceased in the place of death.

Transporting him more than one or two miles is detestable.

If the body was kept not facing the Saläh-direction, the grave should not be exhumed to rectify this.

Similarly, if the body was placed on his left side, the grave should not be exhumed.

If wealth was buried along with the body, then exhuming the grave is permissible.

**Rulings of visiting the graves**

Visiting graves is desirable for men.

In this age, visiting graves is detestable for women.

Reciting the Qurānic chapter Yāsīn is desirable when visiting the graves.

Stepping on the graves is detestable.

Sleeping on the graves is detestable.

Uprooting grass and trees from graveyard is detestable.

**Rulings of the martyr**

Allāh, the High, said:

\[ \text{وَلَا تَحْصُنِّنَّ الْأَلْبَارَ قَدْ غَيَّرُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ أَمُوَاًا بِذَٰلِكَ أَحَبَّاً.} \]

\[ 
\text{نَجْنَةً يُجْنِبُونَ} \]

\[ 
\text{وَيَلَّتُمُّونَ رَبَّهُمْ} \]

\[ 
\text{وَلَا تَجَلَّوُّنَّ الْأَلْبَارَ.} \]

(Al-῾Anār 169)

Never consider those killed in the way of Allah as dead. Rather, they are alive with their Lord, well-provided, happy with what Allah has given them of His grace; and they feel pleased with the good news, about those left behind them who could not join them, that there shall be no fear for them nor shall they grieve.

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

\[ 
\text{مَا مِنْ أَحَدٍ يَدْخُلُ الْجَنَّةَ يُحِبُّ أَنْ يَرْجِعَ إِلَى} \]

\[ 
\text{الدُّنْيَا،} \]

\[ 
\text{وَأَنَّ لَهُ مَا عَلَى} \]

\[ 
\text{الَّةَ مِنْ} \]

\[ 
\text{شَيْءٍ غَيْرُ} \]

\[ 
\text{الشَّهِيدِ،} \]

\[ 
\text{فَإِنَّهُ يَتَمَنَّى أَنْ} \]

\[ 
\text{يَرْجِعَ،} \]

\[ 
\text{فَيُقْتَلُ} \]

\[ 
\text{عَشْرَ مَرَّاتٍ لِمَا} \]

\[ 
\text{يَرَى مِنَ} \]

\[ 
\text{الْكَرَامَةِ.} \]

(Muṣlim 7782)

Nobody who enters Paradise will (ever like to) return to this world even if he were offered everything on the surface of the earth (as an inducement) except the martyr who will desire to return to this world and be killed ten times for the sake of the great honor that has been bestowed upon him. (EQ 12168)

A martyr is a Muslim who has been killed unjustly, no matter whether he was killed in a war, or by a rebel or by a robber.

There are three kinds of martyrs:
1. The perfect martyr: He is martyr in this world and the hereafter.
2. Martyr in the hereafter only
3. Martyr in this world only

1. The Perfect martyr\textsuperscript{222}: A martyr is considered a perfect martyr if he is a Muslim, sane, adult, pure from major de facto filth, and he dies soon after getting wounded so that he does not get a chance to avail of any of the benefits of life like eating, drinking, sleeping, medication nor does a span of time between two Salāhs pass while he is in conscious state.
   Ruling for the perfect martyr: He should not be bathed. He should be enshrouded in his clothes. Funeral Salāh should be performed for him. Then, he should be buried in his blood and clothes. His clothes may be reduced or added to as needed. Pulling out all his clothes is detestable.

2. Martyr in the hereafter\textsuperscript{223} only: He is a person who does not fulfill any of the above prerequisites other than being a Muslim. The rulings of a martyr will not be applied to him, though in the hereafter, he will be a martyr and he will get the reward promised for martyrs.
   Ruling for this category of martyrs: He should be bathed, enshrouded, and Salāh should be performed for him like all other dead persons.

3. Martyr in this world only: He is a hypocrite who is killed in the army-rows of Muslims. He should not be bathed. His clothes should be left upon him. Funeral Salāh should be performed for him as for the perfect martyr based on his apparent state.

\textsuperscript{222} Also included in this category is one who is killed while defending his life, wealth or honor provided he is killed by a sharp weapon.
\textsuperscript{223} Also included in this category is one who is drowned in water, burnt in fire, dies while learning, or dies in an epidemic.
Fasting

Allâh said:

لِيُّنْيَّ مِّن قَتَبَ عَلَى الْيَتَّقِنِينَ

O you who believe, the fasts have been enjoined upon you as they were enjoined upon those before you, so that you may be God-fearing.

Allâh said:

نَفِينِهِ الْيَتَّقِنِينَ

The month of Ramadan is the one in which the Qur’an was revealed as guidance for mankind, and as clear signs that show the right way and distinguish between right and wrong. So those of you who witness the month must fast in it.

Allâh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

بُنِيَ السَّلَّمُ عَلَى خَمْسٍ:

Islam is based on (the following) five (principles):
1. To testify that none has the right to be worshipped but Allah and Muhammad is Allah’s Apostle.
2. To offer the (compulsory congregational) prayers dutifully and perfectly.
3. To pay Zakat (i.e. obligatory charity).
4. To perform Hajj. (i.e. Pilgrimage to Mecca)
5. To observe fast during the month of Ramadan.

There is a consensus in the Islamic community that fasting in the month of Ramazân, the ninth month of the Islamic Hijri calendar, is an individual obligation for every responsible person. No Muslim has voiced a differing opinion regarding its obligatoriness.

The literal meaning of the Arabic word for fasting, Aš Saum is: to abstain.

In Shari’ah, Aš Saum means abstaining from the fast-breaking acts with the intention of fasting from the break of dawn till sunset.

224 Bukhârî 8, EQ 7
225 Sane and adult Muslim
226 The fast-breaking acts are eating, drinking, sexual intercourse, and any other act that is considered de jure as one of them.
Upon whom is Ramazân fasting obligatory?
The fasting of Ramazân is obligatory – to be observed immediately or to be late-observed – upon the people who fulfill the following prerequisites:

1. He should be adult. Fasting is not obligatory upon a child.
2. He should be a Muslim. It is not obligatory upon a Disbeliever.
3. He should be sane. It is not obligatory upon an insane person.
4. He should be living in the Islamic land, or he should be aware of the obligatoriness of fasting if living in a land of conflict.

Upon whom is the immediate observance of Ramazân fasting obligatory?
1. Immediate observance of fasting is obligatory upon a resident person. It is not obligatory for a traveler.
2. It is obligatory upon a healthy person, not upon a sick person.
3. It is obligatory upon a woman when she is pure from menstruation and postnatal discharge.
   • It is not obligatory upon a woman undergoing menstruation or postnatal discharge. In fact, fasting by such women will be invalid.

When is the observance of fasting valid?
The observance of fasting is valid when the following prerequisites are met:

1. The person should make intention of fasting at a time when making intention is valid.
2. The woman should be pure from menstruation and postnatal discharge.
3. The person should not do any fast-breaking act like eating, drinking, sexual intercourse, or any other contact considered de jure as one of them.

Being pure from major de jure filth occurring on account of ejaculation and intercourse is not a prerequisite for the validity of the fasting-observance.

---

227 A boy is considered adult when nocturnal ejaculation occurs to him, he ejaculates at the time of sexual intercourse, or he makes a woman pregnant. If none of these occurs to him then he becomes adult on completing 15 years. The minimum age for him to become adult is 12 years.

A girl is considered adult when menstruation, nocturnal ejaculation or pregnancy occurs to her. If none of these occurs, then she becomes an adult on completing 15 years. The minimum age for her to become an adult is 9 years. (From Al Hidâyah 3/281)

228 The time to make intention for immediate observance of Ramazân fasting and for supererogatory fasting is: after sunset and up to a little before midday.

The time to make intention for late-observance of Ramazân fasting, fasting of expiation and fasting of vow without time specification is: the entire night. The intention will not be valid after the break of dawn.

The time to make intention for fasting of vow with time specification is: after sunset and up to a little before midday.
Kinds of fasting

Fasting is categorized into three kinds:

1. Obligatory
2. Compulsory
3. Traditional
4. Desirable
5. Detestable
6. Prohibited

1. Obligatory: It is the fasting of Ramazân.
2. Compulsory:
   a. Late-observance of a supererogatory fasting which he had broken earlier.
   b. Fasting of vow
   c. Fasting of expiation: It becomes necessary in the following cases:
      i. Eating or drinking intentionally without any excusable difficulty while observing a Ramazân fasting
      ii. Engaging in sexual intercourse intentionally while observing a Ramazân fasting
      iii. Zihār: It refers to the act of a person who prohibits his wife upon himself by saying to her: “You are like the back of my mother for me.”
      iv. Oath-breaking
      v. Committing some forbidden acts while in the state of Ihrām
      vi. Mistaken homicide, or an act considered de jure as mistaken homicide
3. Traditional: It is the fasting on the day of 10 Muharram along with either 9 or 11 Muharram.
4. Desirable:
   a. Fasting on any three days every month
   b. Fasting on the bright days: 13th, 14th and 15th of every Hijrî month
   c. Fasting on Monday and Thursday every week
   d. Fasting on six days in Shawwāl, the 10th month of Hijrî calendar
   e. Fasting on the day of 'Arafah (9 Zul Ḧijjah) for people not performing the major pilgrimage
   f. Dawūd’s fasting: observing fast on one day and not observing it on the next day. This is the best kind of fasting and the most loved by Allāh.
5. Detestable:
   a. Fasting on 10 Muharram, if a person fasts on this day alone
   b. Fasting on Saturday, if a person fasts on this day alone

229 Fasting of vow: It is the fasting which a person makes compulsory for himself to get closer to Allāh. Such a fasting becomes compulsory with the details specified while making the vow. If a person makes a vow to fast on a specific day or on specific days, then fasting is compulsory on the specified day(s). If the person makes a vow without specifying the time, it will be compulsory upon him without time specification. The fasting of vow is obligatory according to some jurists. But according to authoritative Hanafī scholars, it is compulsory as its denier is not considered Disbeliever.

230 Fasting of expiation is obligatory according to some jurists, and compulsory in the opinion of authoritative Hanafī scholars as its denier is not considered Disbeliever.

231 Muharram is the first month of Hijrî calendar.

232 Zul Hijjah is the 12th month of Hijrî calendar.
c. Fasting without break; that is, the person does not break the fast after sunset and joins this fast with the fast on the next day.

6. Prohibited:
   a. Fasting on the day of Īd of fast-breaking (1 Shawwāl)
   b. Fasting on the day of sacrifice (10 Zul Hijjah)
   c. Fasting on the days of Tashrīq: 11, 12 and 13 Zul Hijjah

**Time of making intention for fasting**

Fasting without intention is not valid.

The place of intention is the heart.

If intention is made at any time from the night till a little before midday, then the fasting is valid in the following cases:

1. On-time observance of a Ramazān fasting
2. Fasting for a vow for specific day
3. Supererogatory fasting

On-time observance of Ramazān is valid with the intention of fasting alone or with the intention of supererogatory fasting.

Fasting for a vow for specific day is likewise valid with the intention of fasting alone or with the intention of supererogatory fasting.

Supererogatory fasting is also valid with the intention of fasting alone or with the intention of supererogatory fasting.

However, for the following fasts, intention of fasting with specification as well as making it at night is a prerequisite.

1. Late observance of Ramazān fasting
2. Late observance of a supererogatory fasting which he had prematurely broken earlier
3. Fasting of expiation
4. Fasting for a vow without date-specification

**How is crescent-sighting established**

Allāh’s Prophet Ṭabī’ah said:

صُومُوا لِرُؤْيَتِهِ وَأَفْطِرُوا لِرُؤْيَتِهِ، فَإِنْ غُبِّيَ عَلَيْكُمْ فَأَكْمِلُوا عِدَّةَ شَلْبَانَ ثَلََََََثِينَ. (البخاری ٥٢٥٢)

Start fasting on seeing the crescent (of Ramadan), and give up fasting on seeing the crescent (of Shawwal), and if the sky is overcast (and you cannot see it), complete thirty days of Sha’ban. (EQ 1804)

233 Supererogatory: traditional or desirable
234 The person makes intention of fasting only. He does not specify whether the fasting he is observing is obligatory or supererogatory, nor does he specify whether the fasting is for Ramazān.
235 While making intention he should specify what kind of fasting it is. Moreover, he should make the intention in the preceding night before the break of dawn.

128 of 177
The onset of the month of Ramazān is established either

1. By sighting the crescent, or
2. By the completion of 30 days of the month of Sha'bān, if crescent could not be sighted at the end of the 29 days of Sha'bān

Sighting of crescent for Ramazān is established by the report\(^\text{236}\) of a man or a woman.

Sighting of Īd crescent is established by the testimony of two male, or one male and two female witnesses, if the sky is unclear on account of cloud, dust or smoke.

If the sky is clear, then the sighting of the crescent of both Ramazān and Īd is established only if such a large number of people sights it that its truth becomes overwhelming probable.

For all months other than Ramazān, Shawwāl and Zul Hijjah\(^\text{237}\), the sighting of crescent is established by the testimony of two male, or one male and two female witnesses, provided that the witnesses are trustworthy and they have never been sentenced to Allāh-decreed punishment for slander.

If crescent-sighting for Ramazān is established in a region, then it is established for all the neighboring regions for which the usual crescent-sighting day is the same, provided that the news reaches them through means which make fasting compulsory.\(^\text{238}\)

If a person sights the crescent of Ramazān alone but his report is rejected by the Qāzī, then observing the fasting on the next day is essential for him.

If a person sights the crescent of the Īd of fast-breaking alone and his report is rejected by the Qāzī, then also he will have to observe fasting on the next day. Being without fasting is not permissible for him.

**Ruling of fasting on the day of doubt**

The day of doubt is the day succeeding 29 Sha'bān, if it is not known whether the crescent appeared or not.

Fasting on the day of doubt with the intention of obligatory fasting or with the intention vacillating between obligatory and supererogatory is detestable.

Fasting on the day of doubt with the intention of supererogatory is not detestable if the person strictly intended the supererogatory.

---

\(^{236}\) It is not a prerequisite for establishing the sighting of Ramazān crescent that the person say the words “I witnessed” in his report.

The reporter should be trustworthy. (Bidāyatul Mubtādi 1/39)

\(^{237}\) The rulings for sighting of the crescent of the Īd of sacrifice are like those for the Īd of fast-breaking. (Hidāyah 1/119)

\(^{238}\) The means which make fasting compulsory is the report of a trustworthy man or woman when the sky is unclear, and the report of a very large number of people when the sky is clear.
If a person keeps vacillating between fasting and not fasting while keeping away from the fast-breaking acts, then his fasting will not be valid.

On the day of doubt, a Mufti should ask the common people to wait till a little before midday without making the intention of fasting. When the midday passes and the issue of crescent-sighting remains undecided, he should ask them to stop fasting.

If a person observes fasting on the day of doubt with the intention of supererogatory, and later it becomes clear that the day was the first of Ramazan, then that fasting will be sufficient for him. He does not need to late-observe the fasting for that day.

**Things which do not break fasting**

1. Eating forgetfully
2. Drinking forgetfully
3. Having sexual intercourse forgetfully
4. Applying oil to the head or body
5. Applying kohl, even though he feels the taste in his throat
6. Undergoing cupping
7. Backbiting somebody
8. Making intention of breaking the fasting but not actually doing it through a fast-breaking act
9. Dust enters his throat without his action, even if the dust is from a flour-mill.
10. Smoke enters his throat without his action.
11. Housefly enters his throat.
12. At the break of dawn, he is in a state of major de jure filth on account of sexual intercourse or ejaculation.
   The fasting is also not broken if the person remains in that state all day. However, it will be highly detestable on account of leaving out Salâhs, as they are not valid in that state.
13. The person enters a river and water enters his ear.
14. Mucus enters his nose and he intentionally sucks it in or swallows it.
15. Vomiting overpowers him, but the vomit goes back inside without his action, no matter whether the vomit was in small quantity or large quantity.
16. He vomits intentionally but the vomit returns inside without his action, provided that the vomit is in small quantity, that is, less than mouthful.
17. Eating something sticking to his teeth, provided that the thing is smaller than a chickpea.
18. He takes into mouth something of the size of a sesame seed, chews it till it vanishes, yet he does not feel its taste in his throat.
19. Vaccination, no matter whether it is applied to the skin or to a vein
20. He scrubs his ear with a wooden stick which comes out with earwax over it, then he reenters the stick several times into his ear.

---

239 Cupping: A treatment in which evacuated cups are applied to the skin to draw blood through the surface.
When is expiation along with late-observance compulsory?

In the following cases, fasting is broken and expiation as well as late-observance becomes compulsory for a person observing Ramazân fasting:

1. He eats a food to which one feels disposed by nature and which fulfills the craving of stomach.
2. He consumes a medicine without facing a difficulty excusable in the eyes of the Shari’ah.
3. He drinks water or some other beverage.
4. He engages in sexual intercourse.
5. He swallows the rain-drop that has entered his mouth.
6. He chews a wheat grain and eats it.
7. He swallows a wheat grain without chewing it.
8. He takes in a sesame seed or some other edible thing similar in size to it from outside his mouth and swallows it.
9. He eats a small quantity of salt.
10. He smokes a cigarette or a narghile.
11. He eats soil, provided he is in the habit of eating soil.
   • If he is not in the habit of eating soil, then expiation is not required.

Prerequisites for expiation to become compulsory

1. The person eats or drinks during on-time observance of Ramazân fasting.
   • Expiation is not compulsory if the person eats or drinks during observance of a fasting outside Ramazân.
   • It is also not compulsory if the person eats or drinks during late-observance of a Ramazân fasting.
2. The person eats or drinks intentionally.
   • Expiation is not compulsory if the person eats or drinks forgetfully.
3. He is not mistaken in his eating or drinking.
   • Expiation is not compulsory if he eats or drinks by mistake, thinking that dawn has not yet started or that the sun has set. Later it turns out that this was not the case.
4. He is not in dire necessity of eating or drinking.
   • Expiation is not required if he is in dire necessity of eating or drinking.
5. He is not coerced into eating or drinking.
   • Expiation is not required if he is coerced into eating or drinking.

Description of expiation

The expiation that we have been talking about consists of one of the following:

1. Freeing a slave, no matter whether he is a Muslim or a non-Muslim
2. Fasting for two months at a stretch, not interrupted by the days of Ïd or days of Tashriq\(^{240}\)
3. Feeding 60 poor persons to the amount of what they usually eat on an average.

\(^{240}\) The days of Ïd are 1 Shawwäl and 10 Zul Hijjah. The days of Tashriq are 11, 12 and 13 of Zul Hijjah.
Expiation is compulsory in the above order only. If a person is not capable of freeing a slave, he should observe fasting for two months at a stretch. If he is incapable of that too, he should feed 60 poor people such that each poor person gets two full meals.

It is compulsory that the poor people should not include a person whose expenses are obligatory upon him like parents, children or wives.

If a person wants to give cereals to poor people as expiation, then he should give to each poor person 1.632 kg\(^2\) of wheat, its flour or the price of 1.632 kg of wheat.

In place of the above, he may give 3.264 kg of barley, dates or the price of either of them.

**When is late-observance without expiation compulsory?**

In the following cases, fasting is broken. Its late-performance becomes compulsory but expiation is not required.

1. A faster\(^2\) breaks his fast due to a difficulty excusable in the eyes of the Shari’ah like journey, sickness, pregnancy, lactation, menstruation, postnatal discharge, swooning or insanity.
2. A faster eats something which is not usually eaten and which does not satiate the craving of stomach, like medicine when consumed on account of an excusable difficulty, flour, dough, salt in large quantity when consumed in a single gulp, cotton, paper, endocarp, or soil when he is not in the habit of eating it.
3. A faster swallows one of the following: gravel, iron-object, stone, gold, silver, copper, etc.
4. He is coerced into eating or drinking and he eats or drinks as a result.
5. He is in dire necessity of eating or drinking, and so he eats or drinks.
6. He eats by mistake, thinking that the night remains and the dawn has not yet started, or that the sun has set. Later, it turns out that the dawn had broken or that the sun had not yet set.
7. He gargles or sniffs water into his nose and overdoes it due to which water slips into his stomach.
8. He intentionally vomits and the vomit amounts up to a mouthful.
9. Rain drop or snowball enters his throat provided he does not swallow it by his own action.
10. He breaks a fasting other than on-time observance of Ramazän-fasting.
11. He enters smoke into his throat by his action.
12. Food particle of the size of a chickpea or larger remain among his teeth and he swallows it.
13. He eats intentionally after having eaten forgetfully.
14. He eats in a fasting for which he made the intention in the day, not in the night.
15. He starts his morning as a traveler. Later, he intends to become a resident, and then eats something.
16. He starts his morning as a resident. Later he starts traveling, and then eats something.
17. He keeps away from eating and drinking all day without making an intention of either fasting or not fasting.
18. He enters oil-drop or water inside his ear.
19. He enters medicine into his nose.

\(^2\) It is half sä’, an old Arabic measure of quantity. One sä’ is equivalent to around 3.264 kg.

\(^2\) A faster is a person who observes fasting.
20. He applies an ointment to a wound in the stomach or head, and the ointment reaches inside. If a person breaks his fasting in any of the ways mentioned above, it is compulsory for him to keep away from eating and drinking during the rest of that day honoring the sacredness of the month of Ramazân.

Detestable acts during fasting
The following acts are detestable for a faster. He should keep away from them lest his fasting should become defective.

1. Chewing or tasting something without necessity
2. Accumulating saliva inside the mouth, then swallowing it
3. Any act that would weaken him like the treatments of cupping and bloodletting

Acts which are detestable for a faster
1. Applying oil to moustache and beard
2. Applying kohl
3. Bathing for getting cool
4. Wrapping oneself in a wet sheet of cloth for getting cool
5. Rinsing out one’s mouth and sniffing water into the nose outside of ablution
6. Cleaning the tooth with tooth-stick when the day is about to end: In fact it is a tradition just as it is a tradition in the early part of day.

Desirable acts for a faster
1. To take pre-dawn meal\textsuperscript{243}
2. To delay the pre-dawn meal
   • However, the faster should stop eating and drinking a few minutes before the break of dawn so that he does not get confused whether his fasting was valid or not.
3. To take the fast-breaking meal\textsuperscript{244} early, soon after it becomes certain that the sun has set
4. To take bath before dawn to purify himself from major de jure filth so that he starts the worship of fasting in a pure state
5. To protect his tongue from falsehood, backbiting, slander and swearing at others
6. To benefit from the blessed hours of Ramazân by engaging in recitation of the glorious Qurân, or by reciting any of the remembrance formulas reported in the traditions.
7. Not to get angry, or rage over trivial things
8. To protect his spirit from sexual desires even if it is permissible

\textsuperscript{243} The Arabic word for pre-dawn meal is Sahari which is taken a little before dawn to make the fasting more easily bearable.
\textsuperscript{244} Popularly known in the Indian sub-continent as Iffár, the Arabic word for fast-breaking meal is Fiṭr.
Excusable difficulties which make breaking of fast prematurely permissible

Islam is a dîn in sync with the nature, so it does not lay upon man responsibility beyond his capability. Moreover, Alläh is merciful to His servants, so He has permitted them to break the fast prematurely or to leave it out and then late-observe it on some other day, if the fast causes them harm or difficulty. Thus, for the following persons, leaving out a fast is permissible:

1. For a sick person, if it harms him, or he fears aggravation of the sickness or delay in cure.
2. For a traveler who is on a journey long enough to warrant shortening of Salâh.
3. For a person suffering from severe hunger or thirst wherein it looks overwhelmingly probable to him that he would die if he does not leave out the fast.
4. For a pregnant woman, if the fast harms her or the fetus.
5. For a breast-feeding woman, if the fast harms her or the suckling baby.
6. For a woman undergoing menstruation or postnatal discharge: In fact, it is compulsory for her to leave out fast. If they observe fast, it will be invalid.
7. For a very old person who is not capable of observing fasts
   For him there is no late-observance as well. Instead, he should pay the penalty.
8. For a person observing a supererogatory fast, breaking it prematurely is permissible even if there is no excusable difficulty. However, it will be compulsory for him to late-observe it on some other day.
9. For a person engaged in fighting the enemy

It is desirable for a person on whom late-observance of a fast is compulsory to do it soon. However, if he delays the late-observance, it is permissible.

It is permissible for him to late-observe the missed fasts continuously or with breaks.

If a person delays the late-observance till the next Ramazân arrives, he should give priority to the on-time observance of Ramazân fasts over the late-observance. There is no penalty on him due to delay in late-observance.

When is fulfilling a vow compulsory?

Alläh’s Prophet, الصَّدَقَةُ ﷺ said:

من نذَرَ أنْ يُطِيعَ اللَّّ فَلْيُطِلْهُ، وَمَنْ نَذَرَ أنْ يَلْصِيَهُ فَلَيَلْصِهِ (البخاری ٢/٤٥٤٤)

Whoever vows that he will be obedient to Allah, should remain obedient to Him; and whoever made a vow that he will disobey Allah, should not disobey Him. (EQ 6325)

Fulfilling a vow is compulsory if three prerequisites are fulfilled:

---

245 It amounts to about 89 km or, to be exact, 88.704 km. (Al Fiqh ul Islami wa Adillatuh 2/477)
246 The penalty for one fast is feeding a poor person two full meals consisting of what he usually eats on an average, or giving 1.632 kg of wheat or its market-price, or 3.264 kg of barley or its market-price.
1. The act of vow should be one in whose category there is some compulsory act, like Salāh and fast.
2. The act of vow should be one which is intended in its own right.
3. The act of vow should not be compulsory upon him before making the vow.

Thus, making a vow of freeing a slave, doing Itikāf, performing a supererogatory Salāh or fast is valid.

Making a vow of doing ablution is not valid, as it is not intended for its own sake. Instead ablution is performed to make the Salāh valid.

Making a vow of performing prostrations of recitation is not valid as it is compulsory even without making a vow.

Making a vow to visit a sick person is not valid as there is no compulsory worship in this category.

If a person makes a vow to observe fast on a day of Īd or a day of Tashriq\(^{247}\), his vow is valid.

But it will be compulsory for him to leave out fast on these days as fast is prohibited on these days. He should late-observe it later.

**Itikāf**

Itikāf is staying with the intention of performing the worship of Itikāf in a mosque where congregational Salāhs are held.

**Kinds of Itikāf**

There are three kinds of Itikāf:

1. Compulsory: It is the Itikāf of vow. If a person vows to perform Itikāf, then this Itikāf will be compulsory for him.
2. Emphasized sufficiency tradition: It is performed in the last ten days\(^{248}\) of Ramazān.
3. Desirable: It is the Itikāf other than that of view and that of the last ten days of Ramazān.

**Duration of Itikāf**

The duration of Itikāf varies with the kind of Itikāf.

The duration of Itikāf of vow is the period specified in the vow.

The duration of the traditional Itikāf is the last ten days\(^{249}\) of Ramazān.

For the desirable Itikāf, the minimum duration is a moment of time and the maximum duration is unlimited.

---

247 The days of Īd are 1 Shawwāl and 10 Zul Hijjah. The days of Tashriq are 11, 12 and 13 of Zul Hijjah.
248 Nine days, if the month turns out to be of 29 days
249 Nine days, if the month turns out to be of 29 days
Itikāf is valid only in a mosque where congregational Salāhs are regularly held, in other words, a mosque where Imām and Salāh-announcer have been appointed.

A woman should perform Itikāf in the Salāh-place of her own house.

For the Itikāf of vow, fasting on the day is a prerequisite. It will be invalid without fasting.

But for the validity of traditional and desirable Itikāfs, fasting is not a prerequisite.

**Invalidators of Itikāf**

Itikāf is broken on account of the following:

1. Going out of the mosque without an excusable difficulty
2. Start of menstruation or postnatal discharge
3. Engaging in sexual intercourse or foreplay like kissing or lustful fondling

**Excusable difficulties which make going out of mosque permissible**

Such excusable difficulties are three in number:

1. Physical needs: like relieving oneself on urine or excreta, or bathing to purify oneself from major de jure filth arising from ejaculation or intercourse
   - A person performing Itikāf may get out of the mosque for bathing for purification from the above-mentioned major de jure filth, or for relieving himself from urine or excreta provided that he does not stay outside more than is required for his need.
2. Needs on account of the Islamic law: like Friday Salāh, in case it is not held in the mosque where he is performing Itikāf
3. Compulsive difficulties: like fear for one’s life or goods on staying in the mosque
   - Similarly, if the mosque collapses, he should go out of that mosque with the intention of immediately going to another mosque for performing Itikāf.

An Itikāf-performer may eat, drink and carry out business transaction to obtain something which he needs. But he should not bring the product being traded to the mosque.

**Avoidable acts for Itikāf-performer**

It is detestable for an Itikāf-performer to carry out business transaction inside the mosque merely for business purpose\(^{250}\), no matter whether he brings the product to the mosque or not.

It is detestable to bring the product-on-sale to the mosque for a business transaction he is conducting for the needs of his or his family.

\(^{250}\) If it is to obtain something which he needs, then the business transaction is permissible.
Keeping quiet is detestable if he believes it to be a form of worship. If he does not believe that, then it is not detestable.

**Etiquettes of Itikāf**

The following acts are desirable in Itikāf:

1. To speak only what is beneficial
2. To select the holiest mosque for Itikāf, which is Masjid Harām for the residents of Makkah, then Masjid Nabawi for the residents of Madīnah, then Masjid Aqsā for the residents of Al Quds, then the mosque of Friday Salāh.
3. To engage in Qurān-recitation, traditional remembrances, supplication of blessings upon the Prophet, and study of Islamic books

**Charity of fast-ending**

It is the charity-money that a Muslim spends from his wealth upon the needy on the day of the Šīd of fast-breaking to purify his soul and to compensate for the defects that entered his fasts like useless conversations, obscene words, etc.

Abdullāh bin Abbās (رضي الله عنه) said:

فَرَضَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صلى الله عليه وسلم زَكَاةَ الْفِطْرِ طُهْرَةً لِلصَّائِمِ مِنَ الْلَّغْوِ وَالرَّفَثِ، وَطُلْمَةً لِلْمَسَاكِينِ. (أبو داود ٥٢٤٢)

Allāh’s Prophet prescribed the alms relating to the breaking of the fast as a purification of the fasting from empty and obscene talk and as food for the poor. (EQ 16298)

The charity of fast-ending is compulsory.

**On whom is the charity of fast-ending compulsory?**

The charity of fast-ending is compulsory on people who fulfill the following three prerequisites:

1. He should be a Muslim. It is not compulsory for a Disbeliever.
2. He should be free. It is not compulsory for a slave.
3. He should own Zakāh-cutoff in addition to debts, his basic needs and the needs of his family-members.

So the charity of fast-ending will not be compulsory for a person who does not own the Zakāh-cutoff in addition to debts and his basic needs.

The following things come under basic needs:

- House
- Household chattels
- Clothes
- Vehicles and animals used for travel

---

251 Sadaqatul Fitr, in Arabic

252 The Zakāh-cutoff is the price of 595 gram of silver (₹32,070 at Hyderabad on 11 Aug 2012, source: indiagoldrate.com). For certain special cases, it may be different.
e. Devices which he uses in his profession

That a complete lunar year should pass after he possessed the Zakāh-cutoff, is not a prerequisite.
The prerequisite for the charity of fast-ending to become compulsory is that he should own the Zakāh-
off at the break of dawn on the day of the ‘Īd of fast-ending.
Being adult or sane is not a prerequisite for the charity of fast-ending to become compulsory.
The charity of fast-ending must be given from the wealth of a child or an insane if he owns the Zakāh-
cutoff.

**When does the charity of fast-ending become compulsory?**

The charity of fast-ending becomes compulsory at the break of dawn on the day of the ‘Īd of fast-ending.
If a person dies or becomes poor\(^{253}\) before that time, then it will not be compulsory for him.
If a person is born, embraces Islam, or becomes rich\(^{254}\) after the break of dawn on the day of ‘Īd, then
also the charity of fast-ending is not compulsory for him.
Preponing or postponing the payment of this charity is permissible.
However, it is desirable that he spend this charity before going out to the ‘Īd-mosque.
If a person spends the charity of fast-ending in Ramazān, it is permissible; in fact, it is recommended.
This will enable the poor to make clothes and purchase other necessities for ‘Īd for himself and his
family-members.
Delaying the payment of the charity of fast-ending over the ‘Īd Salāḥ is detestable unless it is because of
an excusable difficulty.

**On whose behalf should the charity of fast-ending be paid?**

It is compulsory to pay the charity of fast-ending on behalf of:

1. Himself
2. His non-adult poor offspring

If his offspring is rich, then the charity of fast-ending should be paid from the offspring’s wealth.

It is not compulsory for a man to pay the charity of fast-ending on behalf of his wife. But if he volunteers
for it, it will be permissible.

It is also not compulsory for a man to pay the charity of fast-ending on behalf of his adult, poor offspring
if the offspring is sane. But if he volunteers for it, it will be permissible.

If his adult, poor offspring is insane, then it is compulsory for him to pay the charity of fast-ending on the
offspring’s behalf.

---

\(^{253}\) In Islamic law, any person *not* owning the Zakāh-cutoff is poor.

\(^{254}\) In Islamic law, any person owning the Zakāh-cutoff is rich.
Amount of charity of fast-ending

The things which have been mentioned under charity of fast-ending in scriptural texts are four:

1. Wheat
2. Barley
3. Dried dates
4. Raisins

The amount of charity of fast-ending on behalf of one person is 1.632 kg\(^{255}\) of wheat or its flour; or 3.264 kg of barley, dried dates or raisins.

If a person wants to pay the charity of fast-ending with some other cereals, it is permissible. He should pay that quantity of the cereal which is equivalent in price to 1.632 kg of wheat or to 3.264 kg of barley.

Paying the equivalent price in terms of currency notes for the charity of fast-ending is also permissible. In fact, it is preferable as it is more beneficial to the poor.

It is permissible to distribute the charity of fast-ending on behalf of one person among several poor persons.

Similarly it is permissible to pay the charity of fast-ending on behalf of a group of people to a single poor person.

People to whom the charity of fast-ending may be paid are the same as the ones mentioned in the Qurānic verse for Zakāh:

\[\text{(verse from the Qurān)}\]

The Zakāh (prescribed alm) is (meant) only to be given to the poor, the needy, to those employed to collect them, to those whose hearts are to be won, in the cause of the slaves and those encumbered with debt, in the way of Allah and to a wayfarer. This is an obligation prescribed by Allah. Allah is All-Knowing, Wise.

Allāh willing, we will discuss them in detail under the topic “People to whom Zakāh may be paid”.

\(^{255}\) It is half sä’, an old Arabic measure of quantity. One sä’ is equivalent to around 3.264 kg.
Establish Salah, and pay Zakah, and advance to Alläh a goodly loan. And whatever good you will send ahead for your own selves, you will find it with Alläh much better in condition, and much greater in reward. And seek forgiveness from Alläh. Indeed Alläh is Most-Forgiving, Very-Merciful.

Alläh’s Prophet ﷺ said:
من أنا أتاك مالًا، فلم يؤمن الزكاة مثله لمالك يوم القيامة شجاعًا أقرع له زبيتان بطوفة يوم القيامة، ثم يأخذ بلهمنته - يعني بشقيه - ثم يقول أنا مالك أنا كنزك، ثم تل: (يا بحسين الذين يبخلون) "الآية (البخاري ١٤٠)

"Whoever is made wealthy by Alläh and does not pay the Zakat of his wealth, then on the Day of Resurrection his wealth will be made like a bald-headed poisonous male snake with two black spots over the eyes. The snake will encircle his neck and bite his cheeks and say, 'I am your wealth, I am your treasure.'" Then the Prophet recited the holy verses: 'Let not those who withhold . . .' (to the end of the verse\textsuperscript{256}). (EQ 1330)

The literal meanings of the Arabic word 
\textit{Až Zakāh} are purification and growth.

\textsuperscript{256} The Qurānic verse is:
ولا يُخسِنَ الرُّبُعُونَ ﱡبَنَّي إِسْرَائِيلَ ﴿مَا أَنْبِثَتْ مِنْهُمُ الْمَلَائِكَةُ وَمَا أَنْبِثَتْ مِنْهُمُ الْمَلَائِكَةُ مِثْلُهْ﴾ (القرآن ٢:٠٣)

Those who withhold in miserliness what Alläh has given them out of His grace should not take it as good for them. Instead, it is bad for them. They shall be forced, on the Doomsday, to put on what they withheld, as iron-collars round their necks. To Alläh belongs the inheritance of the heavens and the earth. Alläh is All-Aware of what you do.
In Shari‘ah, Aţ Ţakāh is transferring the ownership of a specified wealth to the eligible when the specified prerequisites are fulfilled.

Zakāh is an important and essential pillar of Islām. Through Zakāh, Islām eradicates poverty and misery and strengthens the bond of love and brotherhood among the rich and the poor.

**Prerequisites for Zakāh to become obligatory**

Zakāh becomes obligatory only if the following prerequisites are fulfilled:

1. Islām: Zakāh is not obligatory for a Disbeliever, no matter whether he is a Disbeliever from the beginning or he turned apostate.
2. Freedom: It is not obligatory for a slave.
3. Adulthood\(^{257}\): It is not obligatory for a child.
4. Sanity: It is not obligatory for an insane person.
5. Total ownership: This means that the wealth should be in the person’s ownership as well as custody.
   If he owns something but he has not yet taken it into his custody, then it will not be obligatory for him, like a woman’s dower before she takes it into her custody.
   So a woman does not have to pay Zakāh for her dower before she takes it into her custody from her husband.
   Similarly, if a person takes some wealth into his custody but does not own it, then he does not have to pay Zakāh for it, like a debtor who has his creditor’s wealth in his custody.
6. The owned wealth should be equal to or more than the Zakāh-cutoff
   If a person’s wealth is less than the Zakāh-cutoff\(^{258}\), then Zakāh is not obligatory for him.
   The Zakāh-cutoff varies with the category of wealth whose Zakāh is being paid.
7. The wealth should be surplus to his basic needs.
   Zakāh is not obligatory for residential houses, clothes to put on body, household chattels, vehicles and animals used for travel, and weapons in use.
   Similarly, Zakāh is not obligatory on devices he uses in his profession.
   Zakāh is not obligatory on books if they are not meant for sale.
   The reason is that all the above things come under basic needs.
8. The wealth should be free of debt.
   If a person owes a debt deducting which from his wealth makes it null or less than the Zakāh-off, then Zakāh is not obligatory for him.
9. The wealth should be growing, no matter whether de facto or de jure.
   Examples of the de jure are gold and silver as they have been considered de jure to be growing.
   Zakāh will be obligatory for them no matter whether they are minted or not and whether they are in the form of jewelry or utensil.

\(^{257}\) A boy is considered adult when nocturnal ejaculation occurs to him, or he ejaculates at the time of sexual intercourse, or he makes a woman pregnant. If none of these occur to him then he becomes adult on completing 15 years. The minimum age for him to become adult is 12 years.

A girl is considered adult when menstruation, nocturnal ejaculation or pregnancy occurs to her. If none of these occur, then she becomes an adult on completing 15 years. The minimum age for her to become an adult is 9 years.

(From Al Hidāyah 3/281)

\(^{258}\) In most of the cases, the Zakāh-cutoff is the price of 595 gram of silver (=₹32,070 at Hyderabad on 11 Aug 2012, source: indiagoldrate.com).
Zakāh will not be obligatory for gems like pearl, ruby and peridot if they are not meant for sale, as they do not grow, neither de facto nor de jure.

**When is paying the Zakāh compulsory?**

The prerequisite for the payment of Zakāh to become compulsory is that an entire lunar year should pass with the person in possession of the Zakāh-cutoff.

This means that his wealth should be equal to or greater than the Zakāh-cutoff at both the ends of the Zakāh-year\(^\text{259}\). It does not matter if his wealth remained so in the middle of the Zakāh-year.

If a person owns Zakāh-cutoff on some day, and his wealth remains equal to or above Zakāh-cutoff till a lunar year\(^\text{260}\) passes, then paying the Zakāh will be compulsory for him.

Likewise, if his wealth was equal to or above Zakāh-cutoff on some day, then it got reduced to less than Zakāh-cutoff, but at the end of the lunar year\(^\text{261}\), he again became owner of the Zakāh-cutoff or more, then paying Zakāh will be obligatory for him.

If a person owns the Zakāh-cutoff in the beginning of his Zakāh-year, then during the year, he earns more of that category of wealth, that earning will be added to his initial wealth and he will have to pay Zakāh for the entire wealth. It does not matter whether he earned the extra through business transaction, gift, inheritance or some other way.

**When is paying Zakāh valid?**

The paying of Zakāh is valid only if he intends Zakāh while paying to the poor persons, or while paying to the agent who will distribute it among those eligible to receive Zakāh, or when he separates the Zakāh-amount from the rest of his wealth.

If he pays the Zakāh to a poor person without any intention, then later he intends Zakāh with that payment, it will be valid provided that the wealth remains in the custody of the poor person when he is making the intention.

That the poor person should know that the wealth he is taking is Zakāh, is not a prerequisite for validity of Zakāh.

If he pays to a poor person some wealth saying that it is a gift or loan but he intends Zakāh with it, then also his payment of Zakāh will be valid.

---

\(^{259}\) The Zakāh-year starts on the day and month the person first became owner of the Zakāh-cutoff and remained owner of that amount a lunar year later. For example, if a person first became owner of the Zakāh-cutoff on 4 Ramazān 1433 AH, then his Zakāh year will be considered to start from 4 Ramazān 1433 and end on 3 Ramazān 1434. If he owns the Zakāh-cutoff on 3 Ramazān 1434 as well, then Zakāh will be obligatory for him, and this will be his Zakāh-year; else the next day when he owned the Zakāh-cutoff will be considered.

\(^{260}\) A lunar year consists of approximately 354 days.

\(^{261}\) Consisting of approximately 354 days.
If a person pays his entire wealth in charity without intending Zakāh, it will no more remain obligatory for him.

If he loses some of his wealth at the end of his Zakāh-year, then he will not have to pay Zakāh for the lost wealth. For example, a person owned 1000 dirhams at the beginning of his Zakāh-year, which meant that 2.5% or 25 dirham was obligatory as Zakāh. But if at the end of his Zakāh-year, he lost 200 dirhams, then he will have to pay Zakāh on only 1000-200=800 dirhams. The Zakāh would be 2.5% of 800=20 dirhams.

If a person had loaned some wealth to a poor person, then later he forgave him the loan with the intention of Zakāh, it will not be valid as there was no transfer of ownership. Payment of Zakāh is invalid without transfer of ownership.

Zakāh on silver and gold

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Weight in grams</th>
<th>In rupees$^{263}$</th>
<th>Zakāh in ₹ (See footnote 263)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Silver</strong> (₹53.9 per gram on 11 Aug 2012 at Hyderabad)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 dirham</td>
<td>2.975 g</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 dirhams$^{264}$</td>
<td>595 000 g</td>
<td>32070</td>
<td>802</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gold</strong> (₹2802 per gram on 11 Aug 2012 at Hyderabad)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 dinār</td>
<td>4.250 g</td>
<td>11,908</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 dinārs$^{265}$</td>
<td>85 000 g</td>
<td>238,170</td>
<td>5954</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: All amounts have been rounded off to the nearest whole number.

Zakāh is compulsory on silver and gold if they are equal to or more than the Zakāh-cutoff.

The Zakāh-cutoff for silver is 200 dirhams and for gold it is 20 dinārs.

If a person owns silver or gold cutoff or more, he should pay 1/40 as Zakāh.

If he owns 200 dirhams of silver, he should pay 5 dirhams as Zakāh.

If he owns 20 dinārs of gold, he should pay 0.5 dinār as Zakāh.

Adulterated silver is considered de jure as pure silver if silver is more than the impurities.

Adulterated gold is considered de jure as pure gold if gold is more than the impurities.

But if the impurities are more than the pure metal, then the adulterated gold and silver are considered de jure as chattels.

$^{262}$ In Islamic law, a dirham is equal to 2.975 gram of silver which amounted to ₹160 at Hyderabad on 11 Aug 2012 (Source: indiagoldrate.com).

$^{263}$ As on 11 Aug 2012 at Hyderabad (Source: indiagoldrate.com)

$^{264}$ 200 dirham is Zakāh-cutoff for silver.

$^{265}$ 20 dinār is Zakāh-cutoff for gold.
According to Imāms Abū Yūsuf and Muhammad, if a person’s wealth exceeds Zakāh-cutoff, then 1/40 of the exceeding amount is also compulsory as Zakāh. And this is the opinion to be followed.\textsuperscript{266}

While paying the Zakāh for gold or silver, the payer has the following payment-options:

- He may pay silver or gold pieces calculating the Zakāh by weight;
- he may calculate the amount of Zakāh according to the popular currency of the city and make the payment in that currency; or
- he may pay chattels, things sold by measure, or things sold by weight as Zakāh for silver or gold.

\textbf{Zakāh for commodities}

Anything in a person’s ownership other than gold, silver and animals is considered commodity here. The Arabic word is ārž, whose plural is ārz̄.

Zakāh is compulsory for commodities when the following prerequisites are fulfilled:

1. The owner of the commodity intends to sell it or do business transactions in it.
2. The price of the commodity meant for selling reaches the Zakāh-cutoff for silver or gold.

A Muslim businessman should assess the value of all the commodities meant for sale in his ownership at the end of every Zakāh-year. If the value according to the prevalent market rate reaches the Zakāh-cutoff, he will pay 1/40 of the total value as Zakāh. If the total value is less than the Zakāh-cutoff of both silver and gold, then there is no Zakāh for him.

The evaluation of the commodities-for-sale will be based on the prevalent currency of the businessman’s city.

The values of infrastructure and devices necessary for business which are present in the businessman’s shop or factory will not be included in this evaluation.

If a person had owned land, estate or animals, then later he intends to do business transactions in them, the Zakāh-year for those things will begin at the time when he actually starts transactions in them.

\textbf{Zakāh for loan}

With respect to payment of Zakāh, the loans that a person has lent to others are divided into three categories:


1. Strong loan: It is the money a person expects to get back in return for a loan or business commodity when the debtor acknowledges the debt, though he may be bankrupt.
   The loan will also be considered strong if the debtor denies the loan but the lender is capable of presenting witnesses against the denying debtor.

\textsuperscript{266} The other opinion is that of Imām Abū Hanīfah who holds that if a person’s wealth exceeds Zakāh-cutoff, then there is no Zakāh on the exceeding wealth unless it reaches 1/5 of the cutoff.

144 of 177
If the loan is strong, it is compulsory for the lender to pay Zakāh on the loan when any part of the loan is returned to him, no matter whether the returned amount is small or large.\footnote{This is the opinion of Imāms Abū Yūṣuf and Muhammad.} In the case of strong loan, the Zakāh-year will be considered from the date when the lender became owner of the Zakāh-cutoff, not from the date he got back the loan. So, Zakāh will be obligatory for previous years, but paying the Zakāh will be compulsory only when he gets back the loan or part thereof.

2. Moderate loan: If a person sells something out of his basic needs like residential house, clothes for wearing, food items for eating – not a usual business commodity – and the price or a part thereof remains in the hands of the buyer, then it is called moderate loan. If the sold commodity was a usual business commodity, then it would be strong loan. When the lender (seller) gets back any part of the loan — small or large — payment of Zakāh becomes compulsory for him, in the opinion of Imāms Abū Yūṣuf and Muhammad\footnote{According to Imām Abū Hanīfah, it will be compulsory for the lender to pay Zakāh when forty dirhams are returned to him. Whenever, forty dirhams are returned to him, he should pay one dirham as Zakāh. If less than forty dirhams are returned, he need not pay anything as Zakāh.}. In moderate loan too, the Zakāh-year will be considered from the date when the lender became owner of the Zakāh-cutoff, not from the date he got back the loan. So, Zakāh will be obligatory for previous years, but paying the Zakāh will be compulsory only when he gets back the loan or part thereof.

3. Weak loan: It is the money a person expects from another in return for something which is not a wealth, like the dower to be paid to a woman. The dower is not in return for some wealth which the husband took from her. Some other examples of weak loan are:
   - The money the husband expects to receive on account of wife-initiated separation.
   - The money one expects to receive on account of a deceased person’s will.
   - The money the guardians of a murdered person expect to receive on account of conciliation with the intentional murderer.
   - The blood money the guardians of a murdered person expect to receive.
In the case of weak loans, payment of Zakāh is compulsory only when the receiver gets an amount equal to Zakāh-cutoff or more.

The Zakāh-year will be considered from the date when he actually received the money.

So Zakāh of previous years is not obligatory for weak loan.

**Zakāh of inaccessible wealth**

Inaccessible wealth is the one which continues to be in the ownership of the person but it is difficult to get custody of it. Examples:

\footnote{According to Imām Abū Hanīfah, Payment of Zakāh for moderate loan is compulsory only when the person gets back an amount equal to the Zakāh-cutoff. For example, if the debtor (purchaser) owed 1000 dirhams, and the lender (seller) got back 200 dirhams out of that amount, then it will be compulsory for the lender to pay 5 dirhams as Zakāh. If the lender gets back less than the Zakāh-cutoff amount, then payment of Zakāh is not compulsory.}
• He lent to a person but is incapable of producing witnesses to testify for him. Then after some time, he gets back his loan.
• Someone grabbed his wealth and he is unable to produce witnesses against the grabber. Then after some time, the grabber returns his wealth.
• He lost his wealth, then found it back after some time.
• His wealth was confiscated, then he got it back after some time.
• He buried his wealth in the wilderness, then forgot its location. After some time, he found it.

In the case of inaccessible wealth, the Zakāh of previous years is not obligatory.

Who are eligible to receive Zakāh?

Allāh said:

لَعَلَّةَ ضَعْفَاءِنَّ أَلْلَهْ عَلَيْهِ فِي الرَّقِفِ وَالْمُقْرَضِينَ وَالْمُؤْقُوتِينَ عَلَيْهِ وَالْمُتْرَكُونَ وَالْمُعْطَفِينَ وَالْمُؤْمِينَ (2: 270) (Al-Qurān: Al-Baqara)

The Zakāh (prescribed alm) is (meant) only to be given to the poor, the destitute, to those employed to collect them, to those whose hearts are to be won, in the way of Allah and to a traveler. This is an obligation prescribed by Allah. Allah is All-Knowing, Wise.

The Qurān mentioned eight categories of people to whom Zakāh may be given. However, the rightly-guided caliph Umar رضي الله عنُه forbade giving Zakāh to “those whose hearts are to be won”269 with the argument that Islām had become quite strong. None of the holy companions objected to Umar’s رضي الله عَنْهُ decision. Thus by the consensus of the holy companions this category has lost its eligibility270. Now, seven categories remain to whom Zakāh may be paid. We shall describe each category and its related rulings below.

1. The poor

He is a person who owns less than the Zakāh-cutoff.

269 It means the neo-Muslims who are helped in becoming more firm through the generosity of Islām. (Ma‘āriful Qurān v4 p406, under commentary of Qurānic verse 9:60)

270 “The categories to whom Zakāh may be paid as mentioned in the Qurānic verse hold true now and will do so forever. The only exception is the category of “those whose hearts are to be won”. Most of the scholars, Imāms and jurists hold that on account of Islām getting well-known and strong, there is no need of their share now. They present Abū Bakr’s رضي الله عَنْهُ act in argument who did not pay Zakāh to such people. But some other jurists are of the opinion that their share still exists in Zakāh.

“The writer [Ali Mian] feels more inclined towards the opinion of Qāzī Abū Bakr Ibn Al Arabī and others. Qāzī Abū Bakr opines that if Islām enjoys supremacy and influence, then there is no need to pay Zakāh to “those whose hearts are to be won”. But if there is a need, then they should be paid Zakāh just as the Prophet ﷺ used to give them. According to an authentic hadith,

إِنَّ الإِسْلَامَ بَدَأَ غَرِيبًا وَسِيْفُ عَهْدُ غَرِيبًا كَمَا بَدَأَ. (مسلم ١٤٦)

“Truly, Islam started as something strange and it would revert (to its old position) of being strange just as it started. (EQ 7512)”

(Footnote of Arkān e Arba’ah, p 140, author: Shaikh Syed Abul Hasan Ali Mian Nadwi)
Paying Zakāh to a person owning less than the Zakāh-cutoff is permissible even though he is healthy and capable of earning.

2. **The destitute**
He is a person who owns nothing at all.

3. **Zakāh-collector**
He is a person who has been assigned the duty of collecting Zakāh and agricultural tax\(^\text{271}\). He will be paid from the Zakāh-amount in accordance with his work.

4. **Those whose hearts are to be won**
This has been discussed above.

5. **Slaves**
These are the mukātab\(^\text{272}\) slaves.

This category does not exist at present, but when it exists, Zakāh may be paid to it.

6. **The indebted**
He is a person in debt who upon paying back his debt no more remains the owner of Zakāh-cutoff. Paying Zakāh to an indebted person to help him repay his debt is preferable to paying Zakāh to the poor.

7. **In the way of Allāh**
This means spending on the following two category of people:

1. A needy person who is engaged in Jihād in Allāh’s way\(^\text{273}\).
2. A Haj-performer who went out for Haj but is unable to reach Allāh’s house, the Ka’bah because he ran out of money on the way.

8. **Traveler**
He is a traveler who has enough wealth at his home-city, but has run out of money during the journey. Zakāh may be paid to him so that he is able to reach his home-city.

It is permissible for a person on whom Zakāh is obligatory to pay his Zakāh to people from each of the eight categories.

---

\(^{271}\) If an agricultural land is such that rain water is sufficient for it and it does not need irrigation, then one-tenth of the produce should be paid to the Islamic government. If human effort and expense are needed to irrigate the land, then one-twentieth of the produce is to be paid. (Source: Arkān e Arba’ah, p 137, author: Shaikh Sayyidd Abul Hasan Ali Miān Nadvi)

\(^{272}\) A mukātab slave is he who enters into a deal with his master that he would earn the amount specified by the master, give it to him as he earns, and once the agreed amount is paid off, he shall be free. The mukātab slave should be helped to secure his freedom by giving the master a share from Zakāh funds to write off the amount due against the slave. (Source: Ma’āriful Qurān v4 p411, commentary of Qurānic verse 9:60)

\(^{273}\) This means a mujāhid who does not have the means to buy necessary weapons and war supplies, though he may own the Zakāh-cutoff. (Source: Ma’āriful Qurān v4 p413, commentary of Qurānic verse 9:60)
It is also permissible for him to pay his entire Zakāh amount to a person from a single category even though people from other categories are present.

**To whom Zakāh cannot be paid?**

It is not permissible to pay Zakāh to the following people:

1. Disbeliever
2. Rich\(^{274}\) adult
3. Rich child
4. Banū Hāshim and their freed slaves
5. The Zakāh-payer’s parents and ancestors like father, grandfather, etc.
6. The Zakāh-payer’s offspring and descendants like son, grandson, etc.
7. The Zakāh-payer’s spouse
   - Paying Zakāh to all other relations is in fact preferable.
8. For construction of mosque or madrasah, or repair of road or bridge.

Zakāh can also not be used to provide for a deceased person’s shroud or to help repay his loan. For validity of Zakāh payment, transfer of ownership of the Zakāh-wealth to an eligible person is a prerequisite, and in the above cases, the transfer of ownership is not found. A dead person cannot become owner.

The most preferable way is to pay Zakāh to one’s relations, then to one’s neighbors.

It is detestable to pay Zakāh amount equal to Zakāh-cutoff to a single person; like paying a single person 200 dirhams or 20 dinārs.

However, it is not detestable to pay Zakāh amount equal to or greater than Zakāh-cutoff to an indebted person to help him repay his debt. For example, he may pay a person 1000 dirhams for repayment of his debt. It will not be detestable.

It is detestable to transfer Zakāh from one city to another without need.

Transferring Zakāh from one city to another to pay one’s relations is not detestable.

Similarly, it is not detestable to transfer Zakāh from one city to another where the people are needier than those of his city.

It is not detestable to transfer Zakāh away from the city for a purpose which is more beneficial to the Muslims, like Islamic madrasahs that run on charity.

\(^{274}\) In Islamic law, a person is rich if he owns the Zakāh-cutoff or more.
**Haj**

Allāh said:

وَلَيْتَّوَلِيَ الْيَوْمِ الْكَيْلَاءِ جَهَنَّمَةً مَّنْ أَسْكَنَهَا عَلَىٰ سَبِيلَهَا وَمَنْ كَفَرَ قَالَ اللَّهُ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ عَيْنِ الْقَلَّمِينَ (آل عمران ٩٤)

As a right of Allah, it is obligatory on the people to perform Haj of the House – on everyone who has the ability to manage (his) way to it. If one disbelieves, then Allah is independent of all the worlds.

Allāh’s Prophet شٰجٰرفاٰي said:

مَنْ حَجَّ اللَّهَ فَلَمْ يَرْفُثْ، وَلَمْ يَفْسُقْ، وَلَمْ يَرْجَعَ كَيَوْمِ وَلَدَتْهُ أُمُّهُ. (البخاري١٥٢١)

Whoever performs Haj for Allah’s pleasure and does not have sexual relations with his wife, and does not do evil or sins then he will return (after Haj free from all sins) as if he were born anew. (EQ 1441)

Lexically, Haj means heading for a sublime destination.

In Shari’ah, Haj means visiting specific lands at specific time in a specific manner.

There is a consensus in the Islamic community that Haj is obligatory. Not a single Muslim has voiced a differed in this regard.

**Prerequisites**

**Prerequisites for Haj to become obligatory**

Haj is an individual obligation once a lifetime upon every Muslim man and woman when the following prerequisites are fulfilled:

1. He should be a Muslim. Haj is not obligatory for a Disbeliever.
2. He should be an adult. It is not obligatory for a child.
3. He should be sane. It is not obligatory for an insane person.
4. He should be free. It is not obligatory for a slave.
5. He should have the financial capability. Haj is not obligatory for a person without the financial capability.

---

275 A boy is considered adult when nocturnal ejaculation occurs to him, he ejaculates at the time of sexual intercourse, or he makes a woman pregnant. If none of these occurs to him then he becomes adult on completing 15 years. The minimum age for him to become adult is 12 years.

A girl is considered adult when menstruation, nocturnal ejaculation or pregnancy occurs to her. If none of these occurs, then she becomes an adult on completing 15 years. The minimum age for her to become an adult is 9 years. (From Al Hidayah 3/281)
Financial capability means that in addition to the expenses of his dependents during the period of his absence from home, his wealth should suffice for vehicle-expenses and food-expenses of the Haj journey.

**Prerequisites for performance of Haj to become obligatory**

Performance of Haj is obligatory only when the following prerequisites are fulfilled:

1. **Physical health**: Performing Haj is not obligatory if he is handicapped, paralyzed or has gone senile to the extent that he is unable to travel.
2. **End of obstruction to travel**: Performing it is not obligatory for a prisoner or for one fearing a king who forbids going Haj.
3. **Security of the route**: If the route to the Haj-site is not safe, then it is not obligatory.
4. **Presence of husband or close male relation**: Performing it is not obligatory if her husband or close relation is not with her.
5. **Being out of mourning period for a woman**: If a woman is going through her mourning period after a divorce or husband’s death, then performing Haj is not obligatory for her.

**Prerequisites for valid performance of Haj**

Performance of Haj is valid only if the following prerequisites are fulfilled:

1. **Ihram**: Haj is not valid without Ihram.
   Ihram is the act of making intention of Haj (or Umrah) while reciting Talbiyah from one of the Ihram-stations after taking off stitched garments and putting on seamless garments which preferably consist of a seamless cloak and a wraparound.
   A woman’s Ihram only consists of making the intention of Haj (or Umrah) while reciting Talbiyah from a Miqat.
   Talbiyah is reciting the words:
   لَبَّيْكَ اللَّهُمَّ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ لَشَرِيكَ لَكَ لَبَّيْكَ، إِنَّ الْحَمْدَ وَالْفَضْحَةَ لَكَ وَالمُلْكَ، لَشَرِيكَ لَكَ.
   Labbaikallahumma labbaik, labbaika la sharika laka labbaik, inna-lhamda wanni` mata laka walmulk, la sharika lak.
2. **Specific time**: Performance of Haj before or after the months of Haj is not valid.
   The months of Haj are: Shawwāl, Zul Qa’dah and the first ten days of Zul Hijjah. Therefore, if a person circumambulates the Ka’bah or ambulates between Ṣafā and Marwah before this, his Haj will be invalid.
   Performing Ihram before the months of Haj is valid but detestable.
3. **Specific places**: They are the ground of Arafāt for the 9th Zul Hijjah Stay and Masjid Harām of Makkah for visit circumambulation.
   Haj will not be valid if a person misses the 9th Zul Hijjah Stay at ‘Arafah at the specific time of stay.

---

276 A close male relation is one marrying whom is prohibited on account of blood relation, in-law relation or lactational relation. Example: father, grandfather, father’s brother, mother’s brother, husband’s father, son, son’s son, brother, brother’s son, sister’s son, daughter’s husband, etc.
Similarly, Haj will be invalid if he misses the visit circumambulation after the 9th Zul Hijjah Stay at Arafát.

Ihräm Stations

Ihräm-station: it is the place crossing which without performing Ihräm is not permissible for a Haj-intending person residing away from Makkah beyond the Ihräm-stations.

The Ihräm-stations are different for different directions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For people of</th>
<th>Ihräm-station</th>
<th>Description of Ihräm-station</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yemen and India</td>
<td>Yalamlam</td>
<td>A mountain in Tihămah, around 87 km(^{277}) from Makkah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt, Syria and the remaining West</td>
<td>Al Juhfah</td>
<td>A village between Makkah and Madînah near Răbiği</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iraq and the remaining East</td>
<td>Zătu Iḷq</td>
<td>A village nearly 87 km(^{278}) from Makkah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madînah</td>
<td>Zul Hulaïfah</td>
<td>The place where the spring of Banû Jutham lies, 390 km(^{279}) from Makkah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Najd</td>
<td>Qarn</td>
<td>A mountain near Arafát(^{280}).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is compulsory for a Haj-intending person to perform Ihräm when passing by one of the above Ihräm-stations or a place adjacent to one of them. It is not permissible for him to pass by the place without Ihräm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Makkah</th>
<th>Makkah itself</th>
<th>It doesn’t matter whether the person is a permanent or temporary resident of Makkah.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Region between Makkah and an Ihräm-station (Al Hil)</td>
<td>Al Hil</td>
<td>Al Hil is the region between Makkah and Ihräm-station.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A resident of Al Hil will perform Ihräm from his house or from any place between Ihräm-station and the boundary of Al Haram (Makkah).

Constituents of Haj

Essentials of Haj

There are only two essential parts of Haj:

1. 9th Zul Hijjah Stay at the ground of 'Arafah between the sun’s descent from the zenith on the 9th and the dawn-break on the 10th of Zul Hijjah.
   The obligatory Stay at 'Arafah is established by staying there for a moment between the two aforementioned time-limits.

2. Circumambulation of the Ka'bah seven times after the 'Arafah Stay.

\(^{277}\) 87 km: It is actually two marhalahs. According to Mu'jamu Lughat-il Fuqahā, one marhalah = 43.352 kilometer.

\(^{278}\) 87 km: Actually two marhalahs. One marhalah = 43.352 kilometer.

\(^{279}\) 390 km: Actually nine marhalahs. One marhalah = 43.352 kilometer.

\(^{280}\) Arafát is nearly 22 km from Makkah. (Al Auzān-ul Mahmūdah, p113)
This circumambulation is called the visit circumambulation\textsuperscript{281}.

\textbf{Compulsory acts of Haj}

There are many compulsory acts of Haj. Some are:

1. Starting Ihräm from the Ihräm-station (or before)
2. Stay at Muzdalifah though for a moment. The time for this stay begins after Fajr Saläh in the morning of the 10th Zul Hijjah and ends at sunrise.
3. Performing the visit circumambulation on one of the days of sacrifice (10, 11 and 12 Zul Hijjah).
4. Ambulation between Safâ and Marwah seven times. The first ambulation starts at Safâ and the seventh ambulation ends at Marwah.
5. Farewell circumambulation\textsuperscript{282} for non-residents of Makkah
6. Performing two-unit Saläh after every circumambulation\textsuperscript{283}
7. Throwing pebbles at the three pillars on the days of sacrifice\textsuperscript{284}
8. Shaving or shortening of head-hair inside Haram\textsuperscript{285} in the days of sacrifice
9. Purity from major and minor de jure filth during circumambulation and Safâ-Marwah ambulation
10. Keeping away from forbidden things like wearing stitched garments, covering head (for men), covering face, killing games, sexual indulgence, disobedience and quarrel

\textbf{Traditions of Haj}

There are many traditions in Haj, some of which are:

1. Bathing or ablution for Ihräm
2. Wearing seamless cloak and wraparound which are white and new or washed.
3. Performing two units of Salähl after making the intention of Ihräm
4. Saying the Talbiyah frequently
5. Circumambulation at arrival for non-residents of Makkah
6. Performing circumambulation of Ka'bah frequently during stay at Makkah
7. Specific manner of wearing the cloak for men: Before starting circumambulation, the Haj-performer should place one end of his cloak under his right arm-pit and the other end over his left shoulder.

\textsuperscript{281} Visit circumambulation: The Arabic word is Ŧawāf-uţ Žiyārah. Another Arabic term for this is Ŧawāf-ul Ifāţah (post-flow-down circumambulation).

\textsuperscript{282} Farewell circumambulation: The Arabic word is Ŧawāf-ul Wadā'. It is also called Ŧawāf-uš Sadr (departure circumambulation).

\textsuperscript{283} A circumambulation consists of seven circuits of the holy Ka'bah.

\textsuperscript{284} 10, 11 and 12 Zul hijjah

\textsuperscript{285} Haram: It is the name for Makkah and its surroundings. Its limits vary with directions. In the table below, \textit{distance} denotes the distance from the Black Stone (Al Hajar Al Aswad).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Towards</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Towards</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Towards</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Al Madīnah</td>
<td>3 miles</td>
<td>Juddah (Jeddah)</td>
<td>10 miles</td>
<td>Iraq</td>
<td>7 miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yemen</td>
<td>7 miles</td>
<td>Al Ji'rānah</td>
<td>9 miles</td>
<td>Tāif</td>
<td>7 miles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nowadays, the boundaries of the Makkah Haram has been marked with landmarks with details written on them in Arabic and other languages. (Al Mausūat-ul Fiqhiyyat-ul Kuwaitiyah 17/185-186)
8. Strutting during circumambulation: During the first three circuits of circumambulation, the person should walk with short steps and shaking of shoulders.

9. Swift run during Safā-Marwah ambulation: In each of the seven walks between Safā and Marwah, the person should run swiftly between the two green pillars, faster than in the circumambulation strut.

10. Touching the Black Stone or kissing it at the end of every circuit

11. Spending the nights during the days of sacrifice\textsuperscript{286} at Minā

12. Sacrifice by a person performing only Haj

Forbidden acts of Haj

The following acts are not permissible for a person in the state of Ihrām. He must keep away from them to prevent his Haj from becoming defective or invalid.

1. Sexual intercourse and foreplay
2. Committing a prohibited act
3. Quarreling or cursing
4. Applying fragrance
5. Clipping nails
6. Putting on stitched garments for men, like long shirt, loose trousers, jubbah, socks, etc.
7. Covering the head (for men) or face with any usual covering cloth
8. Covering the face and palms for a woman
9. Plucking hair of head, beard, armpit or the pubic region
10. Applying oil to hair or body
11. Cutting the plants and grasses of Haram\textsuperscript{287}
12. Killing a wild land game no matter whether eating it is permissible or not

Manner of performing Haj

A person intending to perform Haj should go to Makkah in the months of Haj – Shawwāl, Zul Qa’dah and the first ten days of Zul Hijjah\textsuperscript{288}. On reaching an Ihrām-station or its vicinity, he should bathe or perform ablution. He should take off his stitched garments and wear wraparound and seamless cloak. Then, he should perform two Salāḥ-units. He should make intention for Haj and recite the Talbiyah:

\textit{"Labbaik allāhumma labbaik, labbaikā lā sharika laka lāmā khāmdu lātā khāmdu lātā r/tabārik, lā t/sharika lākh lāmā khāmdu lātā khāmdu lātā r/tabārik."

Upon saying Talbiyah, he is considered to have performed Ihrām and he is an Ihrāmer now. He should now keep away from every forbidden act of Haj and frequently recite the Talbiyah: after the Salāhs, on

\textsuperscript{286} Days of sacrifice: 11, 12 and 13 Zul Hijjah
\textsuperscript{287} Haram: It is the name for Makkah and its surroundings.
\textsuperscript{288} Bukhārī 2/141
\textsuperscript{289} I respond to Your call, O Allah, I respond to Your call, and I am obedient to Your orders. You have no partner. I respond to Your call. All the praises and blessings are for You. All the sovereignty is for You. You have no partners with you. (Bukhārī 1549, EQ 1486)
stepping up a high land, on stepping down towards a low land, on meeting a caravan, on getting up from sleep, etc.

On reaching Makkah, he should first visit Masjid Haram. Upon seeing it, he should say لا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللهُ أَكْبَرُ (Allah akbar) and go near Hajare Aswad (the Black Stone). He should face the Black Stone saying لا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللهُ أَكْبَرُ and then kiss it, if possible, or else kiss by gesture. Then turning towards his right, he should circumambulate the Ka'bah seven times. In the first three circuits, he should strut, brandishing his shoulders and in the remaining three, he should walk with repose and dignity. The circumambulation should be outside the Hatim. Whenever he passes by the Hatim, he should kiss it directly or by gesture. He should end his seven-circuit circumambulation with kiss or gesture-kiss. Then he should perform two units. This circumambulation is called the Arrival Circumambulation, and it is Prophets's tradition.

He should then go towards Safa and climb it. Once there, he should turn towards the Ka'bah and say أَللُّ أَکْبَرُ (Allah akbar), لَ إِلَّ اللُّ (Lä iläha illalläh), seek Allah's blessings upon Prophet ﷺ, and supplicate to Allah. After that, he should come down towards Marwah and climb it and do all the acts that he did on Safa. Then he should return to Safa, then back to Marwah, and so on. In this way, he should complete seven ambulations. In each of these seven, he should run swiftly, faster than in the circumambulation-strut, when passing between the two green pillars.

On the eighth of Zul Hijjah, he should perform Fajr Salah at Makkah and go to Minä and stay there. He should spend the 8th-9th night there. After the sunrise on the 9th Zul Hijjah (the 'Arafah day), he should move from Minä to 'Arafah and stay there frequently reciting أَللُّ أَکْبَرُ (Allah akbar), لَ إِلَّ اللُّ (Lä iläha illalläh), seeking Allah's blessings on Prophet ﷺ, and supplicating to Him. After the sun's descent from the zenith, the Imam shall lead the Zuhr and Asr Salahs in the time of Zuhr Salah with one Salah-call and two Salah-start-calls. He will continue his stay at 'Arafah till sunset, then go back on the road to Makkah. At Muzdalifah, he should stay and spend the night of sacrifice (9th-10th night) there. The Imam shall lead the Magrib and Ishā Salahs in the time of Ishā with one Salah-call and one Salah-start-call. At the break of dawn on the 10th day (the day of sacrifice), the Imam shall lead the Fajr Salah in the dark. The Imam along with the people will stay there and supplicate to Allah. He will then return towards Makkah before sunrise. On reaching the 'Aqabah pillar, he should throw seven pebbles at it. With the first pebble-throw, he should end his frequent recital of Talbiyah. Then he should perform sacrifice at the time of his convenience, then shave or shorten the hairs on his head. He should then go to Makkah in the period of the three sacrificial days (10th, 11th and 12th) for the Visit Circumambulation. After that, he should return to Minä and stay there.

290 Allah akbar ➔ Allah is great.
291 Lä iläha illalläh ➔ There is no god but Allah.
292 Allah akbar ➔ Allah is great.
293 Lä iläha illalläh ➔ There is no god but Allah.
294 This is called Istilâm: placing one’s palms over the Black Stone and mouth between them and kissing it soundlessly. If the person is unable to do this, he should gesture with his palms towards it and kiss his palms.
295 Safa and Marwah used to be two hillocks near the holy Ka'bah in the days of the Prophet ﷺ and later.
296 8th-9th night: This notation indicates the night between the 8th and 9th of the month.
297 Dark: ie, immediately after dawn-break
After the sun’s descent from the zenith on the 11th, he should throw pebbles at each of the three pillars (the first, the middle and the 'Aqabah). He should start at the first pillar which lies near the Khaif mosque and throw seven pebbles at it. At every pebble-throw, he should say اَللُّأَكْبَرُ, then stay there and supplicate to Alläh. Likewise he should throw pebbles at the middle pillar and stay there. Then he should throw pebbles at the 'Aqabah pillar, but should not stay there. When the sun descends from the zenith on the 12th Zul Hijjah, he should again throw pebbles at the three pillars as he did the previous day. In these days of throwing pebbles, he should spend nights at Minä.

He should then go to Makkah, staying on the way at Muhassab for some time. Upon reaching Makkah, he should circumambulate the Ka'bah making seven circuits without the running with shoulder-brandishing and unaccompanied by Safä-Marwah ambulation. This circumambulation is called Farewell circumambulation (Tawäf al Wadä` or Tawäf as Sadr). After the circumambulation, he should perform two units of Saläh. He should go to the well of Zamzam and drink its water while standing. He should go to Multazam and beseech Alläh and supplicate for whatever he likes. When he intends to return to his home-place, he should turn back from the Ka'bah crying and grieving at separation from the holy house of Ka'bah.

Fully combined pilgrimage

(*Al Qirän*)

The literal meaning of the Arabic word for fully combined pilgrimage, *Al Qirän*, is: combining two things. In Shari'ah, *Al Qirän* is: performing Ihräm at an Ihräm-station for both Umrah and Haj.

According to us, Hanafis, the fully combined pilgrimage is preferable over the partially combined pilgrimage.

And the partially combined pilgrimage is preferable over uncombined pilgrimage.

It is Prophet’s® tradition for the fully combined pilgrim to say at the time of Ihräm: Аллَٰهُمَّ اِنِّيْ أُرِيدُ مِنْيْ وَتَقَبَّلْهُمَا لِيْ فَيَسِرَّهُمَا وَالْحَجَّ، الْلُمْرَةَ. Then he should start saying the Talbiyah. Then he should start saying the Talbiyah.

Upon entering Makkah, the fully combined pilgrim should first perform the Umrah circumambulation completing seven circuits. In the first three circuits, he should run brandishing his shoulders. He should perform two Saläh-units for circumambulation. Then he should perform the Safä-Marwah ambulation, running swiftly between the two green pillars in each ambulation. He should thus complete seven ambulations. These are the acts of Umrah.

298 Allähumma inni urïdu wal Ĥajja, fayassirhumä li wa taqabbalhumä minni. (Alläh! I intend to perform Umrah and Haj, so make them easy for me and accept them from me.)
299 Talbiyah is saying of the words: لَبَّيْكَ اللَّهُمَّ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ لاَ شَرِيكَ لَكَ لَبَّيْكَ إِنَّ الحَمْدَ وَالْنِعْمَةَ لَكَ وَالْمُلْكَ لَعَلَّيْنِ أَرِيْدُ مِنْيْ وَتَقَبَّلْهُمَا لِيْ فَيَسِرَّهُمَا وَالْحَجَّ، الْلُمْرَةَ. (Labbaik, allähumma labbaik, labbaika lâ shârîka laka labbaik, inna-lḥamda wanni` mata laka walmulk, lâ shârîka lak. = I respond to Your call, O Allah, I respond to Your call, and I am obedient to Your orders. You have no partner. I respond to Your call. All the praises and blessings are for You. All the sovereignty is for You. You have no partners with you. (Bukhârî 1549, EQ 1486)
After this, he should begin the acts of Haj. He should perform arrival circumambulation and then complete the other acts of Haj as described in detail.

When he throws pebbles at the 'Aqabah pillar on the day of sacrifice (10th Zul Hijjah), it becomes compulsory for him to sacrifice a small animal or the seventh part of a large animal\(^{300}\).

If he cannot afford any of these, he should observe three fastings before the day of sacrifice and seven fastings after completing the acts of Haj. He has the option of either observing the fastings at Makkah after the days of Tashrïq\(^{301}\) or observing them on return to his home-place.

**Partially combined pilgrimage**

*(At Tamattu’)*

Partially combined pilgrimage or At Tamattu’ is: performing Ihräm at an Ihräm-station only for Umrah. After the two Salâh-units of Ihräm, he should say: مِنِيْ اَلْعُمَّرَةَ، فَسَأَّرِيْدُ إِنِيْ أَلَهُمْ. (Allâh! I intend to perform Umrah, so make it easy for me and accept it from me.)\(^{302}\) He should then start saying the Talbiyah.

Upon entering Makkah, he should perform the circumambulation for Umrah. In the first three circuits, he should run brandishing his shoulders. At the completion of the first circumambulation, he should stop frequent recital of Talbiyah. He should perform the two Salâh-units of circumambulation, then perform the Safâ-Marwah ambulation. After completing the seven ambulations, he should get his hair shaved or shortened. He will now be free from Ihräm if he had not come to Makkah with a sacrificial animal. If he had, he will not be free from Ihräm at the completion of his Umrah.

On the eighth day of Zul Hijjah, he should perform the Ihräm for Haj from his residence (in Makkah) and complete all the acts of Haj. When he throws pebbles at the 'Aqabah pillar on 10 Zul Hijjah, it will be compulsory for him to sacrifice a small animal or the seventh part of a large animal\(^{303}\). If he cannot afford the sacrifice, he should observe three fastings before 10th Zul Hijjah and seven fastings after completing the acts of Haj. If he does not observe the three fastings before 10th Zul Hijjah, then sacrifice is the only option for him. Neither fasting nor charity can substitute it.

**Umrah**

Performing Umrah once in a life-time is emphasized tradition for a person who fulfills the prerequisites for performance of Haj to become obligatory\(^{304}\).

---

\(^{300}\) A small animal is goat, sheep and ram. A large animal is camel, cow, ox and buffalo. If seven people purchase a sacrificial cow and sacrifice it, then each sacrifices the seventh part of the large animal.

\(^{301}\)  Tashrïq: 11, 12 and 13 Zul Hijjah

\(^{302}\) Allâhumma inni uridul 'umrata, fayassirhâ lî wa taqbalhâ minnî. (Allâh! I intend to perform Umrah, so make it easy for me and accept it from me.)

\(^{303}\) A small animal is goat, sheep and ram. A large animal is camel, cow, ox and buffalo. If seven people purchase a sacrificial cow and sacrifice it, then each sacrifices the seventh part of the large animal.

\(^{304}\) See the topic “Prerequisites for performance of Haj to become obligatory”. 
Umrah may be performed at any time of the year.

Performing the Ihrâm for Umrah on the day of "Arafah, the day of sacrifice and the days of Tashriq is detestable.

There are four acts in Umrah:

1. Ihrâm
2. Circumambulation
3. Safâ-Marwah ambulation
4. Shaving or shortening of head-hair

A person intending to perform Umrah should go to Hil (the region between the boundary of Haram and Ihrâm-station) if he is a resident of Makkah, no matter whether he is a permanent resident or a temporary one. He should perform Ihrâm there.

If the person is far away from Makkah and has not yet entered it, he should perform Ihrâm at an Ihrâm-station when intending to enter Makkah.

He should perform circumambulation and Safâ-Marwah ambulation for Umrah. Then he should shave or shorten his head-hair. With this, he becomes free of the Ihrâm-restrictions and his Umrah is complete.

**Violations and their penalties**

Violation means committing a forbidden act at Makkah or in the state of Ihrâm.

There are two kinds of violation:

1. Violation against Haram
2. Violation against Ihrâm

**Violation against Haram**

It is killing a game inside Haram, pointing towards it to a hunter, informing a hunter about its presence; or cutting or plucking out a tree or herb in Haram. It does not matter whether this is done by an Ihrämer or a non-Ihrämer. Each has to pay the penalty.

If a person hunts a wild, land-game in Haram and slaughters it, eating will not be permissible. The game will be considered carrion, no matter whether an Ihrämer or a non-Ihrämer hunts it.

If a non-Ihrämer hunts a game in Haram, it will be compulsory for him to spend the price of the game in charity to poor people. Fasting cannot be a substitute for spending the price in charity.

---

305 Day of 'Arafah: 9 Zul Hijjah; day of sacrifice: 10 Zul Hijjah; days of Tashriq: 11, 12 and 13 Zul Hijjah.
306 Haram: Makkah and its immediate vicinity
307 An Ihrämer has to spend the price of the killed game in charity as penalty if he hunts a game and also if he informs a hunter of the presence of the game and then the hunter kills it.
If a person cuts off a tree or herb in Haram, spending the price in charity will be compulsory, no matter whether he was an Ihrämer or a non-Ihrämer.

If a person cuts off herbs to erect a tent or to make an oven, it is permissible as it is not possible to avoid this.

**Violations against Ihräm**

It is committing an act which is forbidden during Haj or leaving out a compulsory act of Haj.

There are six types of violations against Ihräm:

1. The violation which invalidates the Haj such that the invalidation cannot be expiated by sacrifice, fasting or charity. This violation is engaging in sexual intercourse before stay at 'Arafah. So, if a person engages in sexual intercourse before stay at 'Arafah, his Haj becomes invalid, and it is compulsory for him to sacrifice a goat and late-perform the Haj in the next year.

2. Violations which impose a penalty of sacrificing a large animal. These are two acts:
   a. Sexual intercourse after the stay at 'Arafah and before shaving or shortening of head-hairs
   b. Performing the Visit Circumambulation in a state of major de jure filth

   If a person engages in sexual intercourse after the 'Arafah-stay and before the shaving or shortening of head-hairs, sacrificing a camel or a cow is compulsory.

   Similarly, if a person performs the Visit Circumambulation in a state of de jure filth, sacrificing a camel or a cow is compulsory for him.

3. Violations which impose sacrifice of a small animal or the seventh part of a large animal

   There are several such violations.
   a. Engaging in foreplay like kissing or sensual touching
   b. Wearing a stitched garment by a man without an excusable difficulty
      A woman can wear any garment of her choice except that she should not cover her face with a cloth that touches it.
   c. Removing head-hair or beard without an excusable difficulty
   d. Covering the face by an Ihrämer for one complete day
   e. Applying scent to a large organ completely without an excusable difficulty: Examples of a large organ are thigh, shank, arm, face and head. It does not matter which kind of scent was used.
      Similarly, if the Ihrämer wears a scented garment for one complete day, it is a violation.
   f. Clipping the nails of a single hand or a single foot
   g. Leaving out Farewell Circumambulation

4. Violations which impose spending ½ sä' of wheat or its price in charity

   These violations are also several in number.
   a. Shaving of less than a quarter of head-hair or beard by an Ihrämer
   b. Clipping a nail or two: For every nail, the penalty is ½ sä'.

---

308 If he shaves his head on account of an excusable difficulty like infestation of hair with lice, then he has the option of sacrificing a small animal, or fasting for three days, or feeding three poor people such that each poor person gets ½ sä' of wheat or its price. ½ sä' is equal to 1.632 kg.
c. Applying scent to less than an organ

d. Wearing a stitched or scented garment for less than a day

e. Covering head[^309] or face for less than a day

f. Performing Arrival Circumambulation or Farewell Circumambulation in a state of minor de
jure filth

g. Leaving out pebble-throwing at any of the three pillars

5. Violations which impose charity whose quantity is less than ½ sä' wheat
   This violation occurs when a person kills a louse or a locust. He should spend in charity any
   quantity of his choice.

   If he kills two or three lice or locusts, he should spend a handful of food-grain in charity.

   If he kills more, he should spend ½ sä' wheat in charity.

6. Violation whose penalty is the price.
   This violation is the killing of a wild land-animal.
   If an Ihrämer hunts a wild land-animal, slaughters it, or point to a hunter towards the place of a
   game’s presence, spending the price of the game in charity becomes compulsory for him. It does
   not matter whether the game was flesh-edible or not.

   The price of the game will be decided by two trustworthy men at the place where the game was
   killed or at a nearby place.

   If the price of the game reaches the price of a sacrificial animal, the Ihrämer has the option of
   either purchasing a sacrificial animal and slaughtering it in Haram, or purchasing food-grain and
   distributing it among the poor such that every poor person receives ½ sä'. He also has the option
   of observing one fasting in lieu of every ½ sä' of wheat.

   If the price of the game does not reach that of a sacrificial animal, he has only two options. He
   may purchase food-grain and spend it in charity, or observe a fasting in lieu of every ½ sä' of
   wheat.

   There is no penalty on an Ihrämer for killing harmful insects like wasp, scorpion, housefly, ant,
   moth, etc.

   Similarly, there is no penalty for killing snake, rat, crow or biting dog.

**Haram-sacrifice**

*Al Hady*

Haram-sacrifice or *al hady* is an animal sacrificed in Haram.

A Haräm-sacrifice can be a goat, sheep, cow or camel.

[^309]: Covering head is forbidden only for men. Covering face with a garment touching the face is forbidden for both men and women.
A goat or sheep is valid as Haram-sacrifice on behalf of one person.

A cow or camel is valid on behalf of seven persons provided no one’s share is less than 1/7.

The prerequisites for Haram-sacrifice are same as for the sacrificial animals of Ḥīdul Azhā. That is, the animal should be defect-free.

A goat or sheep is acceptable only if it has completed a year and moved on to the second year of age.

The only exception is a sheep more than six months old and so plump that it cannot be distinguished from a one year old sheep.

A cow is acceptable only if it has completed two years and started the third year.

A camel is acceptable only if it has completed five years and started the sixth year.

Desirable sacrifice and sacrifice of combined pilgrimage should be made in the days of sacrifice\(^{310}\), after pebble-throwing at the ‘Aqabah pillar.

There is no specific time for sacrificing the other Harām-sacrifices\(^{311}\).

All the Haram-sacrifices should be slaughtered in Haram.

Sacrificing the Haram-sacrifices at Minā in the days of sacrifice is tradition.

It is desirable for the owner of the Haram-sacrifice to eat from it if it has been sacrificed as a desirable sacrifice or on account of combined pilgrimage.

If a sacrificial animal for desirable sacrifice dies on the road to Haram, neither the owner nor any other rich person should eat from it. It should be left slaughtered on the road after staining its collar with its blood.

From a sacrifice of vow neither the owner nor any other rich person should eat because it is a charity, so the poor have the right to it.

Similarly, neither the owner nor any other rich person should eat from a sacrifice of violation. A sacrifice of violation is the sacrifice that becomes compulsory to expiate for a defect that has occurred in Haj.

**Visiting the holy Prophet**

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

\[مَنْ زَارَ قَبْرِي وَجَبَتْ لَهُ شَفَاعَتِي.\]

If a person visits me, then my intercession will become compulsory for him.\(^{312}\)

\(^{310}\) Days of sacrifice: 10, 11 and 12 Zul Hijjah

\(^{311}\) Like a sacrifice in lieu of a violation or a sacrifice of vow.
Allah’s Prophet ﷺ said:

من حج البيت ولم يزني فقد جاءني.

If a person performs Haj of Allah’s house and does not visit me, then truly, he has deserted me.\(^{313}\)

Visiting Prophet’s ﷺ grave is one of the most rewarding desirable acts. If Allah guides a person to Haj, he should visit Madinah Munawwarah to visit Allah’s Prophet ﷺ after completing his Haj or before starting it.

After making the intention to visit Madinah, the person should frequently invoke Allah’s blessings and peace upon Prophet ﷺ. Upon reaching Madinah, he should take a bath, apply scent and wear his best clothes, in reverence of the visit to the holy Prophet ﷺ.

First, he should enter Masjid Nabawi with humility, dignity and repose, and perform two units of Masjid-entry Salah. He should supplicate to Allah for whatever he likes. Then turning towards the holy grave, he should stand in front of it with deference, observing the bounds of reverence. He should invoke peace and Allah’s blessings upon him, then convey to Prophet the greetings of people who had asked him to do so. He should again go to Masjid Nabawi and perform whatever Salahs he wishes to. He should supplicate to Allah for himself about whatever he likes, for his parents, for the Muslim Ummah and for whoever asked him to. He should value this opportunity of staying at Madinah Munawwarah, and exert himself to perform Salah over entire nights and to visit Prophet at every opportunity. He should frequently recite سُبْحَانَ اللِّ= Subhänalläh (Glory be to Allah), and لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللُّ= Lâ ilâha illalläh (There is no god except Allah)\(^{314}\), seek Allah’s forgiveness and repent for his sins.

It is desirable that he go to Baqi’ graveyard to visit the graves of prophet’s companions, their successors and other pious people – May Allah be pleased with all of them!

It is desirable that he offer all his Salahs at Masjid Nabawi as long as he stays at Madinah. When he intends to return to his home-place, it is desirable that he say farewell to the mosque by performing two Salah-units, supplicating to Allah for whatever he likes, and visiting holy Prophet’s grave to invoke Allah’s blessings and peace upon him. He should then return crying at separation from him.

\(^{312}\) Ad Dâra Qutnî 2695
\(^{313}\) Kanzul ‘Ummâl 12368
\(^{314}\) Subhänalläh (Glory be to Allah), Lâ ilâha illalläh (There is no god except Allah)
Sacrifice

Allāh said:

قِلْ لَيْتَكُمْ وَأَحَدٌ (القرآن ۸:۹٢٢)

Offer Salāh (prayer) to your Lord, and sacrifice.

Allāh’s Prophet ﷺ said:

عن عائشة، أن رَسُولَ اللَّه صَلَّى اللَّه عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ قال: مَا عَمِلَ آدَمَيْنِ مِنْ عَمَلٍ يَوْمَ النَّحْرِ أَحَبَّ إِلَى اللَّهِ مِنْ إِهْرَاقِ الدَّمِ، إِنَّهُ لَيَأْتِي يَوْمَ القِيَامَةَ بِقُرُونِهَا وَأَشْلَارِهَا وَأَظْلَََهَا، وَأَنَّ الدَّمَ لَيَقَعُ مِنَ اللَّهِ بِمَكَانٍ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَقَعَ مِنَ الَّضِرِّ، فَطِيبُوا بِهَا نَفْسًا.

(الترمذي ۴۶٦، ابن ماجة ۱٢٦١)

Of the deeds a man does on the day of sacrifice the dearest to Allāh is the flow of blood (of sacrificial animal). It will come on the day of Resurrection with its horns and its hair and its hoofs. Indeed, blood will be accepted by Allāh at once even before it falls on the ground. So, please yourselves with it. (EQ 27244)

من وجد سلة فلم يضحي فلا يقترب من مصلانا. (أحمد ۸۲۴۳)

Whoever does not offer a sacrifice despite having the means should not get close to our Ïdgāh. (EQ 54023)

The Arabic word for sacrifice is Uz̄ḧiyyah or Uz̄ḧiyah.

Literally, Uz̄ḧiyyah means: the animal which is slaughtered on the day of Ïd-ul Azhā (Ïd of sacrifice).

In Shariah, Uz̄ḧiyyah means: slaughtering the specified animal with the intention of gaining reward from Allāh on the specified days.

In this translation, we use the word “Sacrifice” for Uz̄ḧiyah.

According to Imam Abü Hanïfah, sacrifice is Compulsory and this is the view to be followed.

According to Imam Abu Yusuf and Muhammad, sacrifice is Emphasized Custom.

For whom is sacrifice Compulsory?

Sacrifice is not Compulsory accept for him who fulfills the following conditions:

1. He should be a Muslim. It is not Compulsory for a Disbeliever.
2. He should be a free person. It is not Compulsory for a slave.
3. He should be a resident. It is not Compulsory for a traveler.
4.  He should be Wealthy. It is not Compulsory for a Poor.\textsuperscript{315}

- For sacrifice to become Compulsory it is not a necessary condition that the Prescribed Wealth remains in his hand for a complete year. In fact, sacrifice becomes Compulsory if a Muslims owns on the days of Ïd-ul Azhâ the Prescribed Wealth in addition to his basic needs.

**Time of Sacrifice**

The time of sacrifice starts with the onset of dawn of the 10\textsuperscript{th} of Zul Hijjah.

It continues till a little before sunset on the 12\textsuperscript{th} of Zul Hijjah.

However for people in towns and cities and large villages slaughtering the sacrificial animal before Ïd salah is not Permissible.

For people in small villages wherein Ïd salah is not Compulsory, slaughtering is Permissible after the onset of dawn.

The most Preferable way is to slaughter the sacrificial animal on the first day out of the days of sacrifice, then comes slaughtering on the second day, and then on the third day.

If the person can slaughter well, then it is Desirable that he slaughter the animal himself.

If he cannot slaughter well, then the Preferable way is to slaughter with the help of others. In any case, he is supposed to be present at the time of slaughter.

Slaughtering the sacrificial animal in the day is Desirable.

However slaughtering at night is also Permissible but Avoidable.

If Ïd salah is not held due to any reason, then slaughtering is Permissible after noon.

If several congregations of Ïd salah are held in a town\textsuperscript{316}, then it is Permissible to slaughter after the earliest salah in the town is over.

**Slaughtering what kinds of animals is Permissible and what kinds is not?**

Slaughtering only camel, cattle, buffalo, goat and sheep is Permissible.

Slaughtering a wild animal for sacrifice is not Permissible.

A goat or sheep can be sacrificed on behalf of one person only.

\textsuperscript{315} A person owning the Prescribed Wealth of 595 g silver or its value or its equivalent or more, in addition to his basic needs is a wealthy person in the eyes of the Shariah. Others are poor.

\textsuperscript{316} Includes cities and large villages
A camel, cow or buffalo can be sacrificed on behalf of up to seven people with the condition that the share of each of them should be at least the seventh part. Sacrificing two-seventh, three-seventh, etc. up to the entire animal is allowed.

If the share of even one of the partners is less than one-seventh, then the sacrifice of all other partners is also invalidated.

Slaughtering a camel, cow or buffalo as sacrifice will be valid on behalf of seven (or more than one) people only if each of the shareholders intends an act of worship like sacrifice, Åqiqah, etc. with this slaughter.

If even one shareholder has the intention of merely obtaining flesh, then the sacrifice will be invalid for all the other shareholders.

Animal’s minimum age
A goat or sheep of sacrifice should have completed one year and started the second year of its life.

Sacrificing a young sheep which has completed more than six months and owing to its fatness appears like a one-year-old is Permissible.

A cow or buffalo of sacrifice must have completed two years and started the third year of its life.

A camel of sacrifice must have completed five years and started the sixth year of its life.

Defective animals
It is Preferable that the animal of sacrifice be plump and free of all defects.

However, if an animal hornless by birth is sacrificed it is Permissible.

Similarly, sacrificing an animal which has lost a part of its horn is Permissible.

But if the breaking point of the horn is so low that it has reached the head, then sacrificing it is not Permissible.

If a castrated animal is sacrificed then it is not only Permissible but also Preferable as its flesh is better and tastier.

Sacrificing an animal afflicted with scabies\textsuperscript{317} is Permissible if it is plump. But if the scabies-afflicted animal is thin, then its sacrifice is not Permissible.

Sacrificing an insane animal is Permissible when its insanity does not prevent it from grazing.

But if the insanity prevents it from grazing, then its sacrifice will not be Permissible.

\textsuperscript{317} = itching
Sacrificing an animal whose one or both eyes have been lost is not Permissible.

It is not Permissible to sacrifice an animal which is so lame that it cannot walk to the slaughter-house.

Sacrificing a lame animal which walks on three feet and puts down the fourth foot on the ground for support in walking is Permissible.

If an animal is so lean that there is no marrow in its bones, then its sacrifice is not allowed.

Similarly sacrificing an animal whose major portion of ear or tail has been lost or has got cut is not allowed.

But if the animal has lost one-third of its ear or less and two-third or more remains intact, then its sacrifice is valid.

Sacrificing an animal most of whose teeth have fallen off is not Permissible.

But if more than half of its teeth remain intact, then sacrificing it is Permissible.

Sacrificing an animal which has no ear by birth is not Permissible.\textsuperscript{318}

Sacrificing an animal whose udder-tip has been cut off is also not Permissible.

### How to use the sacrificial flesh and skin?

It is Permissible for a sacrificer to eat out of the sacrificial animal’s meat.

He may also gift the flesh to poor persons and wealthy persons.

However, the Preferable method is to distribute the sacrificial flesh into three parts:

(i) One-third for giving to the poor as charity
(ii) One-third to store for his own use and his family’s use
(iii) One-third for his relations and friends

If the sacrificer gives away his entire meat, then it is Preferable.

If he stores the entire flesh for his and his family’s use, then also it is Permissible.

If the sacrificing was made in fulfillment of a vow, then it is not Permissible for him to eat even a bit. He must give away the entire flesh to the poor in charity.

It is Permissible for the sacrificer to use the skin – not the price obtained on its sale – of the sacrificed animal in its place of use.\textsuperscript{319}

\textsuperscript{318} But if it has small ears by birth, it may be sacrificed. (Ad Durr-ul Mukhtār 6/324)

\textsuperscript{319} Like making a bucket or shoes with it.
He may also gift the skin to a wealthy person.

But if he sells the skin, then it is Compulsory to give the money obtained as price in charity.

The sacrificer should not pay the butcher his wage from the sacrificial flesh nor from the price obtained by selling the skin.
**Glossary**

**Arabic words and their English equivalents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>farż</td>
<td>obligatory, mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wäjib</td>
<td>compulsory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunnah</td>
<td>Prophet’s tradition, custom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunnat e muakkadah</td>
<td>emphasized tradition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nafl</td>
<td>supererogatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustahab, mandüb</td>
<td>desirable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afzal</td>
<td>preferable, highly rewarding, more rewarding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adab, adäb</td>
<td>etiquette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jäiz, mubāh, ħalāl</td>
<td>permissible, allowable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man`, nahy</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makrūḥ tanzīhī</td>
<td>undesirable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makrūḥ</td>
<td>detestable, avoidable, avoidability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makrūḥ tahrimī</td>
<td>highly detestable, strictly avoidable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ħarām</td>
<td>prohibited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adä</td>
<td>on-time performance, on-time observance (fasting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àdl</td>
<td>trustworthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahl</td>
<td>family-members, dependants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahle Kitāb</td>
<td>Scripture People</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahle Sunnah</td>
<td>This is the opinion to be followed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àlaïh-il Fatwā</td>
<td>intentionally, knowingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àmādan</td>
<td>major non-Salāḥ act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àmāl yunāfī-s Salāḥ</td>
<td>Salāḥ-invalidating act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ämīn</td>
<td>So beit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anšār</td>
<td>Helper Companions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àqeedah</td>
<td>doctrines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asā’a</td>
<td>commit a bad act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ašl</td>
<td>principle, fundamental, basis, basically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āurah</td>
<td>organs to be hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azān</td>
<td>Salāḥ-call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āţīmat</td>
<td>necessitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baihaqī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badarja e aulā</td>
<td>preferentially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baddīnī</td>
<td>depravity, irreligiosity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāṭil māl</td>
<td>Caliphate Treasury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bākīrah</td>
<td>virgin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bālīgh</td>
<td>adult, opposite: child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāţīl</td>
<td>invalid, void</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baul</td>
<td>urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bepardaği</td>
<td>Veillessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidāt</td>
<td>heresy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chit letnā</td>
<td>supine position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dafn</td>
<td>burial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dahriyah</td>
<td>Atheist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dalālah</td>
<td>denotation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dalīl</td>
<td>evidence, proof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dārul Amn</td>
<td>a land of peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dārul Harb</td>
<td>a land of conflict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dārul Islām</td>
<td>the Islamic land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhela</td>
<td>clay-lump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>din</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīni mafsadah</td>
<td>religious impropriety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duā</td>
<td>invocation, supplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dubur</td>
<td>hind orifice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
faqir  poor, indigent
Far’ Other rulings (Al Fiqh-ul Muyassar)
farz e àin individual obligation
farz e kifayah sufficiency obligation
fasad depravity
fásid broken,invalid
fásiq habitual sinner
fatwā denā delivered the ruling
fidyah penalty
fitnah evil
fuqahā jurists
ghäiẗ excrement
ghaliz Severe
gumrāḥī deviation
ḥad, ḥudūd Allāh-decreed punishment
ḥādith tradition
ḥadath de jure Filth (major, minor)
Ḥaj Ḥaj, Major Pilgrimage
ḥājare aswad the Black Stone
ḥājī Ḥaj-performer, pilgrimer
ḥājah necessity
ḥājat e Ašā basic needs
ḥalālah a thrice-divorced woman being lawful in marriage for the first husband after she is married to another man, has copulation and is then divorced by him.
ḥamd praise
Ḥanafi
Ḥāfībī
ḥaqiqī de facto
ḥaraj harm, sin
Ḥaram Makkah and its immediate vicinity
Ḥarām (Masjid)
ḥinth oath-breaking
ḥukm ruling
ḥukmī de jure
Īd Īd
Īdul Aẓhā ʿĪd of sacrifice
Īdul Fiṭr ʿĪd of fast-ending
iddah mourning period, post-divorce waiting period
ifrād uncombined major pilgrimage
iftār fast-breaking meal
ighmāʾ swoon
iḥrām
iḥtiyāq caution
iḥyā-ul Lāl Night-waking
ikrāh coercion
i’lā exaltation
iṁā gesture
imām Imām
imāmah imām-duty
intiqāl posture change
iqāmah Salāḥ-start-call
istilām kiss
istinjā’ Cleansing
istinshāq sniffing into
iʿtīḍāl temperance
iʿtikāf
lyāl family-members, dependants
izār lower wraparound, wraparound
iz̄īrār indispensability, dire necessity
jahr audible recitation
janābah state of major de jure filth arising from ejaculation or intercourse
jihad Jihāḍ
jināyah violation
jināẓah bier
Jum‘ah Friday Salāḥ
junūn insanity
kafan enshroud
kaffārah expiation
Kāfir Disbeliever
kaifiyyah manner
khabar e wāḥid news from single source
khafīf Mild
khaṭā’an mistakenly
khaṭīb sermon-deliverer
khuff thick socks
khulʿ wife-initiated separation
khushūʿ devoutness
kuṭbah the Arabic sermon
khuzū̀́ humility
kinā̀ implicit
kitāb, bàb, faṣl unit, chapter, topic
kufr Disbelief
läz̈im binding, essential
lā mazhab agnostic
laḥd niche-grave
mā e kathīr large-quantity
mā e qālīl small-quantity
maḥram close male relation
maḥz̅ūr forbidden
majlis occasion, place
ma’kūl-ul Laḥm Flesh-edible
māl wealth
māldār Wealthy
Mālikī
marḥālah 43.352 km
marīţ sick person
masbūq late-comer at Salāh
masḥ wiping
Masjid Ḥarām
Masjid Nabawī
Masjid Aqṣā
maṣlaḥat expediency
ma’thūr traditional
maulūd newborn
mauqūf suspended
maẓmaẓah rinsing out
ma’zūr excusable
miḥrāb Imām-niche
Miqāṭ ihram-station, It is any of the places close to Makkah passing which without ihram is not permissible for a Haj-intending outsider.
miskīn destitute
miṣr city, town
miswäk tooth-stick
mo’mīn Believer
muāmalah contract
muazzīn Shālah-announcer
muftī (A scholar of Islamic jurisprudence whose opinion is sought and followed by the people. He has no executive authority.)
muftīr fast-breaking act
muđdah duration
muḥaqiq authoritative scholar
muḥdith ablutionally impure
muḥīr Imām
muḥājīd mujāhid
mukallaf responsible person
mukātab mukātab
mūnāfiṣ sentient, non-sentient
mūnāfīq Hypocrite
munfarīd singleton, individual
muqīm resident
muqṭadī iḥrāmer
murtad apostate
musāfir traveler
muṣallā ʿĪd-mosque
mustā’mal Used-up
mustaqiṣl in its own right
muta’akhkhir later
mutāḥ
mu’tamīr Umrah-performer
mutaqaddim earlier
mutaważżī ablutionally pure
nabī the Messenger صلَّى الله عليه و سَلَّم
nafaqah expenses
nafāz execution
nafl supererogatory
najāṣah Filth
nājis Filthy
nāqīṣ defective, deficient
nāqīṣ Invalidator
nasab filiation, parentage, blood relation
nāṣiyan forgetfully
nazīr, nazārīr similitude
nazr vow
nifāṣ postnatal discharge
nisāb Žakāh-cutoff
niyyah intention
qa’dah  At Tahiyät sitting
qaddara  estimate
qamiś  long shirt
qaryah  village
qaśr  shortening of salāḥ
qaṭā'ī  incontrovertible, conclusive
qawāid  principles
qāzā  late-perform, late-observe
(fasting), delayed performing
Qāzī  Qāzī
qiblah  Salāḥ-direction
qirā'ah  additional Qurānic recitation
qirān  fully combined pilgrimage
qubul  fore orifice
rasūlullāh  Allāh's Prophet ﷺ
rajjaḩa  called this opinion preferable
rażāāt  breastfeeding
rakāh  Salāḥ-unit
ramal  strut, run brandishing his shoulders
ramy  pebble-throw
ridā’  seamless cloak
rif  flatus
riwāyah  report, narration
rukhsat  concession
rukn  essentials, essential part
sā’  3.264 kg
šābiyy e āqil  discerning child
sadde Zarīāh  Barring the agent
šadaqah  charity
šadaqatul Fīr  Charity of fast-ending
šaf  salah-row
šahābah  holy companions
šahābī  holy companion
šaḥārī  pre-dawn meal
šāhī ṣ  valid (sound)
sahwan  forgetfully, unknowingly, unintentionally
sajda e sahw  prostration of forgetfulness
sajda e tilāwat  prostration of recitation
salaf  great predecessor
šalāh  Salāḥ
śalāh  supplication of blessings for the prophet
šalām phernā  performing the ending salām
šalām karnā  saying the salām greeting
šāliḥ  pious
sāq  shank (not calf)
šāriḥ  explicit
šaum  fasting, faster
sawā’un kāna  irrespective of whether it is ..., no matter whether it is ...
sa’y  Ṣafā-Marwah ambulation
Shāfī  shahādah  testimony, witness
shahwah  desire, arousal, sensual
shaq  ditch-grave
shariāh  Shariāh, Islāmic law
sharī  prerequisite, condition, stipulation
shatm  curse
shibr  span
sirr  inaudible recitation
sūd-khārī  interest-exaction
sukr  inebriation
sunnat e kifāyah  sufficiency tradition
su’r  Leftover
sūrah  Qur’ānic chapter
tabarra’a bi  volunteer for
tābi‘īn  Companion's successors
tahārah  Purification, Pure, Purity
tāhīrimmah  prohibitive words of Salāḥ,
the first Takbīr
Takbīr  Takbīr
Takbīr e żāid  Additional Takbīr
Talbiyah
tamattu’  partially combined pilgrimage
tark  leave out, abstention
tartīb  performing in order
Tasbīḥ  remembrance formula
Tashahhud  At Tahiyät
Tashriq Tashriq
tawāf  (Ka’bah) circumambulation
tawāf e qudūm  Arrival Circumambulation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>šādær</th>
<th>Farewell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>źawāfe wadā`</td>
<td>Circumambulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>źawāfe źiyārah</td>
<td>visit Circumambulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta`źīr</td>
<td>punishment for the crimes for which the quantum of sentence has not been fixed by Allāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanā`</td>
<td>extolment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thayyib</td>
<td>Previously married woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>źib</td>
<td>scent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>źuma`nīnah</td>
<td>tranquility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ẓummah</td>
<td>Islamic community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ūmrāh</td>
<td>Umrah, Minor Pilgrimage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uṣūl</td>
<td>fundamentals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʿuzzr</td>
<td>necessity, excusable difficulty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waʿlī</td>
<td>testamentary guardian, guardian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waqār</td>
<td>dignity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watn</td>
<td>home-place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wuqūf ʿArafāt</td>
<td>9th Zul Hijjah Stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wuẓū`</td>
<td>ablution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaẓīn</td>
<td>oath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaḥṣabī lah</td>
<td>supposed to be, should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaqūmu maqāmāh</td>
<td>is de jure equivalent to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ẓāhirān, bazāhir</td>
<td>apparently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ẓakāh</td>
<td>Ẓakāh, Obligatory Charity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zakar</td>
<td>phallus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zālim</td>
<td>tyrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zannīh Ẓāsil Ghālib</td>
<td>Overwhelming probability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zannī</td>
<td>tenable, credible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>żārūrah, majbūr`</td>
<td>compulsion, dire need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>žawāl`</td>
<td>the sun's descent from the zenith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Žihār</td>
<td>Žihār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zikr</td>
<td>remembrance formula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>źinā</td>
<td>unlawful copulation, unlawful copulator, unlawful copulatress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>žīndīq</td>
<td>hypocrite apostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zirā`</td>
<td>cubit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zulm</td>
<td>unjust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents: Detailed

### All Topics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS: BRIEF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTERS ..........................................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FOREWORDS |

| FOREWORD 1 ...................................................................... | 5 |
| FOREWORD 2 ...................................................................... | 6 |
| PREFACE ........................................................................... | 10 |

### PURIFICATION |

| PURIFYING WATER .......................................................... | 14 |
| Kinds of water which cause Purification ........................................... | 14 |
| Kinds of water and their rulings .................................................. | 14 |
| Rulings of water in which some pure thing has got mixed .......................... | 15 |
| Rulings of leftover water ........................................................ | 17 |
| Rulings of well-water ................................................................ | 18 |

| ETIQUETTES OF RELIEVING ONESELF ...................................... | 20 |
| Rulings of cleansing .......................................................... | 22 |

| KINDS OF FILTH AND THEIR RULINGS ..................................... | 24 |
| How to remove Filth? .......................................................... | 27 |

| ABLUTION (WUŽU) ............................................................. | 29 |
| The ruling of Ablution ......................................................... | 29 |
| Essentials of Ablution ......................................................... | 29 |
| Prerequisites for validity of Ablution ....................................... | 30 |
| Prerequisites for Ablution to become essential .......................... | 30 |
| Other rulings related to Ablution ........................................... | 30 |
| Traditions of Ablution ......................................................... | 31 |
| Etiquettes of Ablution ......................................................... | 32 |
| Avoidable acts of Ablution .................................................... | 32 |
| Kinds of Ablution .............................................................. | 33 |
| When is Ablution Obligatory (Farz)? ...................................... | 33 |
| When is Ablution Compulsory (Wajib)? .................................... | 33 |
| When is Ablution Desirable? ................................................. | 33 |
| Invalidators of Ablution ...................................................... | 34 |

| BATHING ................................................................. | 36 |

---

172 of 177
MANDATORY ACTS OF BATHING ................................................................. 36
TRADITIONS OF BATHING .................................................................. 36
KINDS OF BATHING ........................................................................... 36
WHEN DOES BATHING BECOME MANDATORY? ................................. 36
WHEN IS BATHING A TRADITION? ..................................................... 37
WHEN IS BATHING DESIRABLE? ........................................................ 37
TAYAMMUM ......................................................................................... 38
THE COMMAND OF TAYAMMUM IN THE SHARI’AH ......................... 38
PREREQUISITES FOR VALIDITY OF TAYAMMUM ................................. 38
ESSENTIALS OF TAYAMMUM .............................................................. 40
TRADITIONS OF TAYAMMUM ............................................................... 40
METHOD OF TAYAMMUM .................................................................... 40
INVALIDATORS OF TAYAMMUM .......................................................... 40
OTHER RULINGS RELATED TO TAYAMMUM ...................................... 41
WIPING THICK SOCKS ......................................................................... 42
PREREQUISITES FOR VALIDITY OF WIPING THICK SOCKS .................. 42
MANDATORY ACTS AND TRADITIONS OF WIPING ......................... 42
PERIOD OF VALIDITY OF WIPING THE SOCKS ..................................... 42
INVALIDATORS FOR WIPING THICK SOCKS ........................................ 43
WIPING WOUND-DRESSING AND SPLINT .......................................... 44

SALĀH

KINDS OF SALĀH .................................................................................. 45
PREREQUISITES FOR SALĀH TO BECOME OBLIGATORY .................... 45
TIMES OF SALĀHS .............................................................................. 47
OTHER RULINGS RELATED TO SALĀH-TIMES .................................... 48
TIMES WHEN SALĀH IS NOT PERMISSIBLE ....................................... 48
TIMES WHEN SUPEREROGATORY SALĀHS ARE AVOIDABLE ............... 49

SALĀH-CALL AND SALĀH-START-CALL: AZĀN AND IQĀMAH ............... 50
DESIRABLE ACTS OF SALĀH-CALL ................................................. 51
AVOIDABLE ACTS OF SALĀH-CALL .................................................. 51
CONSTITUENTS OF SALĀH ................................................................. 53
PREREQUISITES FOR VALIDITY OF SALĀH ....................................... 53
OTHER RULINGS RELATED TO PREREQUISITES OF SALĀH ............. 54
ESSENTIALS OF SALĀH ................................................................. 56
COMPULSORY ACTS OF SALĀH ....................................................... 58
TRADITIONS OF SALĀH .......................................................... 60
DESIRABLE ACTS OF SALĀH ............................................................ 63
INVALIDATORS OF SALĀH .............................................................. 64
ACTS WHICH DO NOT INVALIDATE THE SALĀH ................................. 66
DETESTABLE ACTS OF SALĀH ........................................................... 67
NON-DETESTABLE ACTS OF SALĀH .................................................. 68
MANNER OF PERFORMING SALĀH ...................................................... 70
CONGREGATIONAL SALĀH ............................................................... 73
VIRTUE OF CONGREGATIONAL SALĀH ........................................... 73
FOR WHOM CONGREGATION IS EMPHASIZED TRADITION .............. 74
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For whom is the 'Id Salāh compulsory?</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites for validity of 'Id Salāh</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desirable acts for the day of fast-breaking</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manner of performing the Salāhs of the two 'Ids</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rulings of the 'Id of sacrifice</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECLIPSE SALĀH</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAIN-PRAYER</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNERAL RITES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What should be done to a person approaching death?</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATHING THE DECEASED</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What should be done to a dying person before bathing him?</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rulings of bathing the deceased</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manner of bathing the deceased</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHROUD</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rulings of enshrouding the deceased</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shroud for man</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shroud for woman</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNERAL SALĀH</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rulings of funeral Salāh</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites for funeral Salāh</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traditions of funeral Salāh</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other rulings related to funeral Salāh</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manner of funeral Salāh</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BURIAL</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rulings of carrying the bier</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rulings of burying the dead</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rulings of visiting the graves</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RULINGS OF THE MARTYR</strong></td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FASTING</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upon whom is Ramazān fasting obligatory?</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upon whom is the immediate observance of Ramazān fasting obligatory?</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When is the observance of fasting valid?</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinds of fasting</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of making intention for fasting</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How is crescent-sighting established</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruling of fasting on the day of doubt</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Things which do not break fasting</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When is expiation along with late-observance compulsory?</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites for expiation to become compulsory</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description of expiation</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When is late-observance without expiation compulsory?</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detestable acts during fasting</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acts which are detestable for a faster</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desirable acts for a faster</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SACRIFICE

FOR WHOM IS SACRIFICE COMPULSORY?........................................................................................................... 162
TIME OF SACRIFICE ..................................................................................................................................................... 163
SLAUGHTERING WHAT KINDS OF ANIMALS IS PERMISSIBLE AND WHAT KINDS IS NOT? .................................................. 163
  Animal’s minimum age ................................................................................................................................................. 164
  Defective animals......................................................................................................................................................... 164
HOW TO USE THE SACRIFICAL FLESH AND SKIN?...................................................................................................... 165

GLOSSARY

ARABIC WORDS AND THEIR ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.................................................................................................. 167

CONTENTS: DETAILED

ALL TOPICS ........................................................................................................................................................................ 172